



tense



comparative



Aa



noun



# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### ENGLISH GRAMMAR GUIDE



conditional



negative



verb



A COMPREHENSIVE VISUAL REFERENCE



# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### ENGLISH GRAMMAR GUIDE



## Consultant, British English

---

**Diane Hall** has been working in English language teaching for over 30 years, as a teacher, trainer, editor, publisher, and writer. She has published several books, both general courses and grammar books, for major English-language publishers. She has an MA in Applied Linguistics, and is currently also an Associate Lecturer in English grammar and functional linguistics at the Open University.

## Consultant, American English

---

**Professor Susan Barduhn** is an experienced English-language teacher, teacher trainer, and author, who has contributed to numerous publications. In addition to directing English-language courses in at least four different continents, she has been President of the International Association of Teachers of English as a Foreign Language, and an adviser to the British Council and the US State Department. She is currently a Professor at the School of International Training in Vermont, USA.



# ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

## ENGLISH GRAMMAR GUIDE



conditional



negative



verb



comparative



Aa



noun





Penguin  
Random  
House

**US Editors** Jenny Siklos, Allison Singer  
**Project Editor** Ben Ffrancon Davies  
**Art Editors** Dominic Clifford, Paul Drislane,  
Sunita Gahir, Clare Shedden  
**Editorial Assistants** Sarah Edwards, Helen Leech  
**Illustrators** Edwood Burn, Michael Parkin  
**Jacket Designers** Suhita Dharamjit, Ira Sharma  
**Jacket Editor** Claire Gell  
**Jacket Design Development Manager**  
Sophia MTT  
**Producer, Pre-Production** Andy Hilliard  
**Producer** Mary Slater  
**Managing Editor** Daniel Mills  
**Managing Art Editor** Anna Hall  
**Publisher** Andrew Macintyre  
**Art Director** Karen Self  
**Publishing Director** Jonathan Metcalf

#### DK India

**Senior Managing Art Editor** Arunesh Talapatra  
**Senior Art Editor** Chhaya Sajwan  
**Art Editor** Meenal Goel  
**Assistant Art Editor** Rohit Dev Bhardwaj

First American Edition, 2016  
Published in the United States by DK Publishing  
345 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014

Copyright © 2016 Dorling Kindersley Limited  
DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC  
16 17 18 19 20 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
001-289769-Dec/2016

All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under the copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.  
Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book  
is available from the Library of Congress.  
ISBN 978-1-4654-5154-5

DK books are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-raising, or educational use. For details, contact: DK Publishing Special Markets, 345 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014  
SpecialSales@dk.com

Printed and bound in China

All images © Dorling Kindersley Limited  
For further information see: [www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)

A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# Contents

|    |                                |    |
|----|--------------------------------|----|
| 01 | The present simple             | 8  |
| 02 | The present simple negative    | 12 |
| 03 | Present simple questions       | 14 |
| 04 | The present continuous         | 16 |
| 05 | Present tenses overview        | 20 |
| 06 | Imperatives                    | 22 |
| 07 | The past simple                | 24 |
| 08 | The past simple negative       | 28 |
| 09 | Past simple questions          | 30 |
| 10 | The past continuous            | 32 |
| 11 | The present perfect simple     | 34 |
| 12 | The present perfect continuous | 38 |
| 13 | The past perfect simple        | 40 |
| 14 | The past perfect continuous    | 42 |
| 15 | "Used to" and "would"          | 44 |
| 16 | Past tenses overview           | 46 |
| 17 | The future with "going to"     | 48 |

|    |                                |     |
|----|--------------------------------|-----|
| 18 | The future with "will"         | 50  |
| 19 | The present for future events  | 54  |
| 20 | The future continuous          | 56  |
| 21 | The future perfect             | 60  |
| 22 | The future in the past         | 62  |
| 23 | Future overview                | 64  |
| 24 | The passive                    | 66  |
| 25 | The passive in the past        | 68  |
| 26 | The passive in the future      | 72  |
| 27 | The passive with modals        | 74  |
| 28 | Other passive constructions    | 76  |
| 29 | Conditional sentences          | 78  |
| 30 | Other conditional sentences    | 84  |
| 31 | Conditional sentences overview | 86  |
| 32 | Future possibilities           | 88  |
| 33 | Wishes and regrets             | 90  |
| 34 | Forming questions              | 94  |
| 35 | Question words                 | 98  |
| 36 | Open questions                 | 100 |

|    |                                 |     |
|----|---------------------------------|-----|
| 37 | Object and subject questions    | 102 |
| 38 | Indirect questions              | 104 |
| 39 | Question tags                   | 106 |
| 40 | Short questions                 | 108 |
| 41 | Short answers                   | 110 |
| 42 | Questions overview              | 112 |
| 43 | Reported speech                 | 114 |
| 44 | Tenses in reported speech       | 116 |
| 45 | Reporting verbs                 | 120 |
| 46 | Reported speech with negatives  | 122 |
| 47 | Reported questions              | 124 |
| 48 | Reported speech overview        | 128 |
| 49 | Types of verbs                  | 130 |
| 50 | Action and state verbs          | 132 |
| 51 | Infinitives and participles     | 134 |
| 52 | Verb patterns                   | 138 |
| 53 | Verb patterns with objects      | 142 |
| 54 | Verb patterns with prepositions | 145 |
| 55 | Phrasal verbs                   | 146 |

|    |                                  |     |    |                                      |     |
|----|----------------------------------|-----|----|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 56 | Modal verbs                      | 152 | 75 | Quantity                             | 202 |
| 57 | Ability                          | 154 | 76 | Approximate quantity                 | 208 |
| 58 | Permission, requests, and offers | 156 | 77 | Personal pronouns                    | 210 |
| 59 | Suggestions and advice           | 158 | 78 | Reflexive pronouns                   | 212 |
| 60 | Obligations                      | 162 | 79 | Indefinite pronouns                  | 216 |
| 61 | Making deductions                | 164 | 80 | Possession                           | 220 |
| 62 | Possibility                      | 166 | 81 | Defining relative clauses            | 226 |
| 63 | Articles                         | 168 | 82 | Non-defining relative clauses        | 228 |
| 64 | Articles overview                | 174 | 83 | Other relative structures            | 230 |
| 65 | "This / that / these / those"    | 176 | 84 | Question words with "-ever"          | 232 |
| 66 | "No / none"                      | 180 | 85 | "There"                              | 234 |
| 67 | "Each / every"                   | 182 | 86 | Introductory "it"                    | 238 |
| 68 | "Either / neither / both"        | 184 | 87 | Shifting focus                       | 240 |
| 69 | Singular and plural nouns        | 188 | 88 | Inversion                            | 242 |
| 70 | Countable and uncountable nouns  | 190 | 89 | Ellipsis                             | 244 |
| 71 | Subject-verb agreement           | 192 | 90 | Shortening infinitives               | 246 |
| 72 | Abstract and concrete nouns      | 194 | 91 | Substitution                         | 250 |
| 73 | Compound nouns                   | 196 | 92 | Adjectives                           | 252 |
| 74 | Numbers                          | 198 | 93 | Gradable and non-gradable adjectives | 256 |

|     |                                     |     |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 94  | Comparative adjectives              | 258 |
| 95  | Two comparatives together           | 263 |
| 96  | "As... as" comparisons              | 266 |
| 97  | Superlative adjectives              | 268 |
| 98  | Adverbs of manner                   | 272 |
| 99  | Comparative and superlative adverbs | 274 |
| 100 | Adverbs of degree                   | 276 |
| 101 | Adverbs of time                     | 280 |
| 102 | Adverbs of frequency                | 282 |
| 103 | "So" and "such"                     | 284 |
| 104 | "Enough" and "too"                  | 286 |
| 105 | Prepositions                        | 288 |
| 106 | Prepositions of place               | 290 |
| 107 | Prepositions of time                | 292 |
| 108 | Other prepositions                  | 296 |
| 109 | Dependent prepositions              | 298 |
| 110 | Coordinating conjunctions           | 302 |
| 111 | Subordinating conjunctions          | 306 |
| 112 | More linking words                  | 310 |

|     |                                     |     |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 113 | Linking words overview              | 312 |
| 114 | Prefixes                            | 314 |
| 115 | Suffixes                            | 316 |
| 116 | Easily confused phrases             | 320 |
| 117 | Sequencing and organizing           | 322 |
| 118 | Correcting and changing the subject | 324 |
| 119 | Deciding and hedging                | 326 |
| 120 | Making conversation                 | 328 |

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| <b>Reference</b> | 330 |
|------------------|-----|

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| <b>Glossary</b> | 350 |
|-----------------|-----|

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| <b>Index and Acknowledgments</b> | 354 |
|----------------------------------|-----|



# 01 The present simple

The present simple is used to make simple statements of fact, to talk about things that happen repeatedly, and to describe things that are always true.

**See also:**

Present continuous **4** Present for future events **19** Adverbs of frequency **102**

## 1.1 THE PRESENT SIMPLE

To make the present simple of most verbs, use the base form (the infinitive without "to").

I **eat** lunch at noon every day.

The base form of the verb "to eat."

Adverbs of frequency are often used with the present simple.



She **eats** lunch at 2pm every day.

With "he," "she," and "it," add "-s" to the base form.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

We **drink** coffee every morning.



We **start** work at 9am.



They **leave** work at 5pm.



She **drinks** coffee every morning.



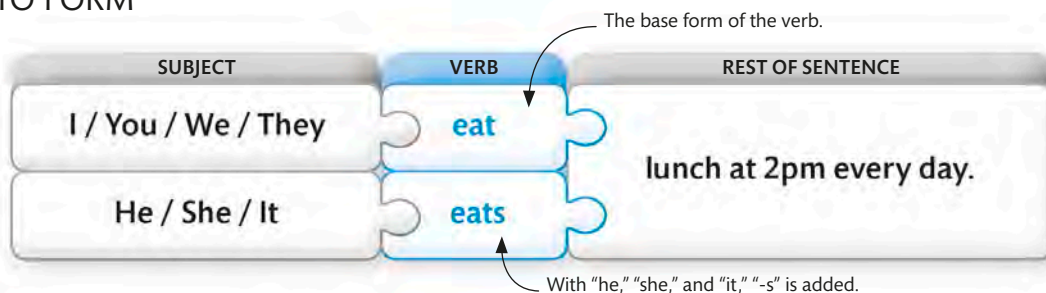
He **starts** work at 11am.



Rob **leaves** work at 7pm.



## HOW TO FORM



## 1.2 "-S" AND "-ES" ENDINGS

With some verbs, "-es" is added for "he," "she," and "it."

These include verbs ending with "-sh," "-ch," "-o," "-ss," "-x," and "-z."

I **go** to bed.

He **goes** to bed.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-o."

I **finish** work.

He **finishes** work.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-sh."

I **watch** TV.

She **watches** TV.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-ch."

I **cross** the road.

She **crosses** the road.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-ss."

I **fix** cars.

She **fixes** cars.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-x."

Their phones **buzz** all day.

His phone **buzzes** all day.

"-es" is added to verbs ending with "-z."

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Tom **does** the dishes every evening.



He **washes** the windows on Fridays.



She **teaches** English to six students.



He **blushes** when he's embarrassed.



### COMMON MISTAKES FORMING THE PRESENT SIMPLE

When the present simple is used with "he," "she," "it," or one person's name, it always ends in "-s" or "-es."

An "s" is added to the base form "start."

He **starts** work at 11am. ✓

He **start** work at 11am. ✗

"Start" without an "s" is only used for "I," "you," "we," and "they."

There is no need to add the auxiliary verb "do" when forming the present simple. It is only used to form questions and negatives.

I **eat** lunch at noon every day. ✓

I **do eat** lunch at noon every day. ✗

"Do" is only used as an auxiliary verb when forming negatives or questions.

### 1.3 "BE" IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

"Be" is an important verb with an irregular present simple form.



**I am** 25 years old.



**You are** a chef.



**He is** happy.

"Are" also follows  
"we" and "they."

"Is" also follows  
"she" and "it."

#### HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT       | "BE" | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------------|------|------------------|
| I             | am   | happy.           |
| You           | are  |                  |
| He / She / It | is   |                  |
| We / They     | are  |                  |

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I am** a doctor.



**We're** late for work.

Contractions can  
also be used.



**They are** students.



**He's** American.



**My grandma is** 92 years old.



**Ruby's** seven years old.





## 1.4 "HAVE" IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

"Have" is an irregular verb. The third person singular form is "has" not "haves."

**I have** a garage.



"Has" is used for the third person singular: "he," "she," and "it."

**She has** a yard.



## HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT                | "HAVE" | OBJECT    |
|------------------------|--------|-----------|
| I<br>You<br>We<br>They | have   | a garage. |
| He<br>She<br>It        | has    |           |

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I have** a car.



**The cat has** a new collar.



**You have** a sister.



**He has** a cold.



**I have** a painful back.



**Thomas has** a driving lesson today.



**They have** the same dress.



**Jack has** a bad headache.



**They have** a new baby.



**Sarah has** coffee with Tom every Tuesday.



# 02 The present simple negative

To make negative sentences using "be" in the present simple, "not" is added after the verb. For other verbs, the auxiliary verb "do not" or "does not" is used.

See also:

Present simple 1 Present overview 5

Types of verbs 49

## 2.1 NEGATIVES WITH THE VERB "BE"

The verb "be" takes the same form in positive and negative sentences. The only difference is adding "not."

**I am** a farmer. **I am not** a doctor.



### HOW TO FORM



## 2.2 NEGATIVE CONTRACTIONS

"Is not" and "are not" can be contracted in two ways. The subject and verb can be contracted, or the verb and "not." They mean the same thing.

**You are not** a doctor.  
↓  
"You are" becomes "you're."  
**You're not**  
**You aren't** } a doctor.  
↑  
"Are not" becomes "aren't."



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I'm not** a teacher.

↑  
"I amn't" is incorrect.

**He's not**  
**He isn't** } a farmer.

**They're not**  
**They aren't** } American.

## 2.3 NEGATIVES WITH OTHER VERBS IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

For verbs other than "be," "do not" or "does not" goes before the verb to make the negative.

I **work** outside.

I **do not** **work** outside.



He **works** inside.

He **does not** **work** inside.



Verb in base form.

### HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT             | "DO / DOES" + "NOT" | BASE FORM | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------|------------------|
| I / You / We / They | do not              | work      | outside.         |
| He / She / It       | does not            |           |                  |

The base form is used no matter what the subject is.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



You **do not** **have** a computer.

We **don't** **start** work at 8am.



He **does not** **live** in Los Angeles.

He **doesn't** **have** a car.



This is the contracted form of "does not."



### COMMON MISTAKES FORMING NEGATIVE SENTENCES

The main verb in a negative sentence always stays in its base form, even if the subject is "he," "she," or "it."

He **does not** **work** outside.



He does not **works** outside.



# 03 Present simple questions

Questions in the present simple with “be” are formed by swapping the verb and subject. For other verbs, the auxiliary verb “do” or “does” must be added before the subject.

See also:

Present simple 1 Forming questions 34

Question words 35 Open questions 36

## 3.1 QUESTIONS WITH “BE” IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

To form questions in the present simple using “be,” reverse the order of the subject and the verb.

In a statement, the subject comes before the verb.  
**You are Canadian.**

**Are you Canadian?**

In a question, the verb moves to the start of the sentence.

The subject comes after the verb.



## HOW TO FORM

| “BE” | SUBJECT         | REST OF SENTENCE |
|------|-----------------|------------------|
| Am   | I               | Canadian?        |
| Is   | he / she / it   |                  |
| Are  | you / we / they |                  |

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Am I** on time?



**Is he** your brother?



**Where are we?**



**Am I** on the list?



**Is it** time to leave?



**Are they** friendly?



Question words can be used before the verb to form open questions.



### 3.2 QUESTIONS WITH "DO" AND "DOES"

For questions with verbs other than "be," start the question with "do" or "does." Don't swap the subject and the main verb.

**You work** in an office.

**Do you work** in an office?

Add "do" to questions with "I," "you," "we," and "they."

**She works** in a school.

**Does she work** in a school?

Add "does" to questions with "he," "she," and "it."

The main verb goes in its base form.

#### HOW TO FORM

| "DO / DOES" | SUBJECT             | BASE FORM OF VERB | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Do          | I / you / we / they | work              | in an office?    |
| Does        | he / she / it       |                   |                  |

The verb never takes an "-s" or "-es" when you ask a question.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Do they live** in Paris?



**Do you usually finish** work at 4pm?



**Does Tom get up** at 6am?



**When does the party start?**



Question words can be used before "do" or "does" to form open questions.



#### COMMON MISTAKES FORMING PRESENT SIMPLE QUESTIONS

Never add "-s" or "-es" to the base form of the verb when asking a question, even in the third person singular ("he," "she," or "it").

**Does he finish** work on time? ✓

The main verb always goes in its base form in questions.

**Does he finishes** work on time? ✗

Do not add "-s" or "-es" to the main verb when asking a question.

# 04 The present continuous

The present continuous is used to talk about continued actions that are happening in the present moment. It is formed with "be" and a present participle.

## See also:

Present simple 1 Action and state verbs 50

Infinitives and participles 51

## 4.1 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

The present continuous is used to describe a current, continued action.

Julie usually wears jeans, but today **she is wearing** a dress.

The present continuous uses the verb "be."

This is the present continuous. It describes what is happening right now.

This is the present simple. It describes a repeated action or situation.



## HOW TO FORM



Present participle

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**We are walking** the dog.



**They're fighting** with each other.



**He is washing** the dishes.



**She's relaxing** at the moment.



**They are talking** on their phones.

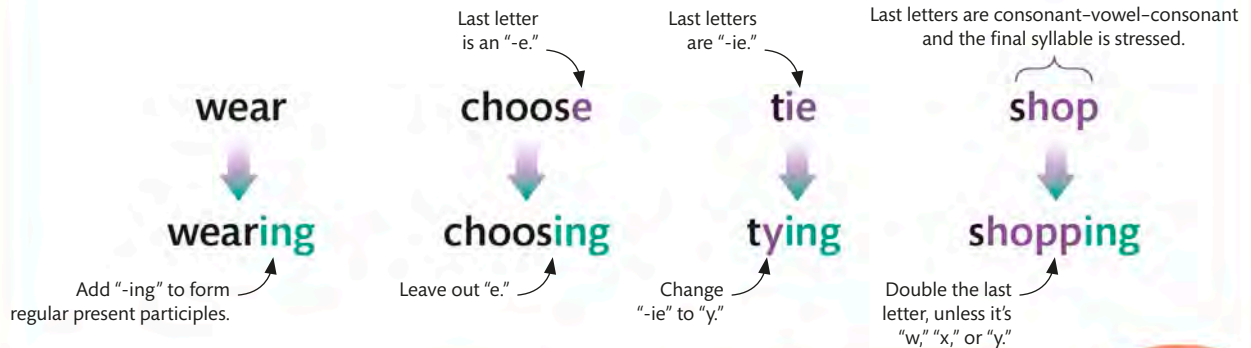


**It's raining** a lot outside.



## 4.2 PRESENT PARTICIPLE SPELLING RULES

The present participle is formed by adding “-ing” to the base form of the verb. Some participles have slightly different spelling rules.



### TIP

Present participles follow the same spelling rules as gerunds.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Examples of present participles in use:

- They’re **opening** a store next week. (Don’t double the last letter because the final syllable is not stressed.)
- My uncle is **writing** a novel.
- Harry is always **lying** to his mother.
- Terry is **mopping** the floor.
- I am **cutting** some apples.
- My mother is **baking** us a cake.

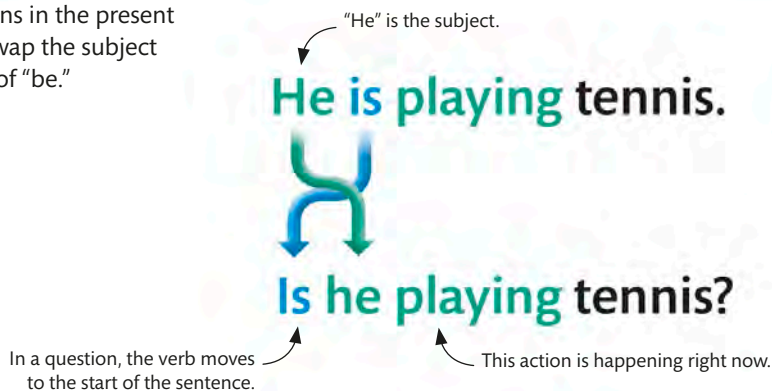
## COMMON MISTAKES STATE VERBS IN CONTINUOUS TENSES

Action verbs can be used in simple and continuous forms.  
State verbs are not usually used in continuous forms.

| ACTION   | STATE  |
|--|--|
| <b>I read</b> every day. ✓<br><b>I am reading</b> right now. ✓ | <b>I own</b> two cars. ✓<br><b>I am owning</b> two cars. ✗ |

### 4.3 QUESTIONS IN THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

To ask questions in the present continuous, swap the subject and the form of "be."



#### HOW TO FORM



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Are they going to the park?



Is he cycling to work?



Is she eating pizza?



Are they working late?



Question words such as "what," "where," and "how" can be used before the verb to form open questions.

Where are we going today?



Are you coming to the party?



What are you eating for dinner?



Is it raining outside?





## 4.4 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS NEGATIVE

To make the negative of the present continuous, add "not" after "be."

He is wearing a tie, but he **is not** wearing a hat.

Add "not" after "be" to make the negative. Contractions are also possible.

The present participle stays the same when you make the negative.



### HOW TO FORM



The present participle doesn't change.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

He **isn't walking** the dog.



We **aren't taking** the bus today.



They **aren't singing** well today.



You **aren't doing** your job!



She **isn't cleaning** up her bedroom.



James **isn't reading** his book.



They **aren't looking** where they're going.



We **aren't eating** out this week.



He **isn't playing** football today.



You **aren't doing** well at school this year.



# 05 Present tenses overview

## 5.1 THE PRESENT SIMPLE AND THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

The **present simple** is used to talk about permanent situations, regular occurrences, things that are always true, repeated actions, and ongoing states.

This is always true.  
The sun **rises** in the East.



The **present continuous** is used to refer to temporary situations, repeated actions around the present moment, and ongoing actions in the present moment.

This is a temporary situation.  
It **is raining** in San Francisco right now.



## 5.2 PRESENT TENSE QUESTIONS

**Present simple** questions with "be" are formed differently from other verbs.

**Are** you English?

The form of "be" comes before the subject.

**Do** you speak English?

"Do" or "does" is added before the subject.

**Present continuous** questions are always formed in the same way.

**Is** it raining?

The form of "be" comes before the subject.

## COMMON MISTAKES USING "S" IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

"-s" is never added to the base form of the verb when asking a **question** or making a **negative** sentence, even in the third person singular ("he," "she," or "it").



### AFFIRMATIVE

An "-s" is added to the base form in affirmative sentences.

He **starts** work at 7am. ✓

He **start** work at 7am. ✗

The base form without an "-s" is only used for "I," "you," "we," and "they."

The present simple and present continuous are used in different situations. There are different ways to form questions and negatives with these tenses.

See also:

Present simple **1** Present continuous **4**

Forming questions **34** Infinitives and participles **51**

Giorgio **plays** golf every weekend.

This is a repeated action.



Robert **lives** in London.

This is a continuing state.



Julia **is playing** lots of golf these days.

This is a repeated action happening around the present moment.



At the moment, Robert **is watching** TV.

This is an ongoing action in the present moment.



### 5.3 PRESENT TENSE NEGATIVES

**Present simple** negatives with "be" are formed differently from other verbs.

I am **not** French.

"Not" is added after the form of "be."

I **do not** speak French.

"Do not" or "does not" is added between the subject and main verb.

**Present continuous** negatives are always formed in the same way.

It is **not** raining.

"Not" is added after the form of "be."

#### QUESTION

The verb always goes in its base form in questions.

Does he **finish** work on time? ✓

Does he **finishes** work on time? ✗

"-s" or "-es" are not added to the main verb when asking a question.

#### NEGATIVE

The base form is used in the negative.

He does not **work** weekends. ✓

He does not **works** weekends. ✗

"-s" or "-es" are not added to the main verb in negative sentences.

# 06 Imperatives

Imperatives are used to give commands or to make requests. They can also be used to give warnings or directions.

See also:

Types of verbs 49 Suggestions and advice 59

Indefinite pronouns 79

## 6.1 IMPERATIVES

Imperatives are formed using the base form of the verb (the infinitive without "to").

The base form of the verb "to stop."

Stop!

An exclamation mark is used if the imperative is urgent.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Get up.



Be careful!



Give that to me.



Eat your breakfast.



Help!



Read this book.



## 6.2 NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES

"Do not" or "don't" can be added before the verb to make an imperative negative.

Do not } turn right.  
Don't }



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Don't eat that cake.



I've just painted that door.  
Don't touch it.



Don't rush. I'm not in a hurry.



Don't sit there. That chair is broken.





### 6.3 SUBJECTS WITH IMPERATIVES

An imperative sentence does not usually have a subject, but sometimes a noun or a pronoun is used to make it clear who is being talked to.

**Everybody sit down.**



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Phillip, come here.**



**You stay there.**



For emphasis "you" can be used in an imperative clause.

**Someone open the window.**



**Have fun, Anne.**



The subject can also be placed at the end.

### 6.4 POLITE REQUESTS

Imperatives in English can be considered rude. Words can be added to make them more polite.

**Please close the door.**



"Please" can be placed before the imperative verb to make a request more polite.

**Just give me a minute, please.**



"Just" can go before the imperative.

"Please" can also be placed at the end of the sentence.

**Do come in.**



"Do" can go before the imperative verb to make a request more formal.

### 6.5 MAKING SUGGESTIONS WITH "LET'S"

"Let's" can be used to make a suggestion for an activity that includes the speaker.

**It's sunny today. Let's go out.**



Base form.

**It's cold. Let's not go out.**



"Not" goes after "let's" to form the negative.

# 07 The past simple

The past simple is used to talk about completed actions that happened at a fixed time in the past. It is the most commonly used past tense in English.

**See also:**

Past simple negative **8** Past simple questions **9**  
Present perfect simple **11**

## 7.1 REGULAR VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

To form a regular verb in the past simple, “-ed” is added to the base form.



TUESDAY



TODAY

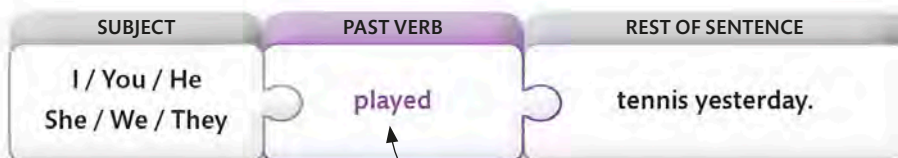
Walter **washed** his car on Tuesday.

The verb ends in “-ed.”

Fixed point in the past.

## HOW TO FORM

Most verbs in the past simple do not change with the subject.



The same form is used for all subjects.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Last night, I **watched** a documentary about Italy.

Heather **cleaned** her bedroom last weekend before the party.



Last Friday I **danced** with friends.

Tom **shaved** off his beard yesterday.



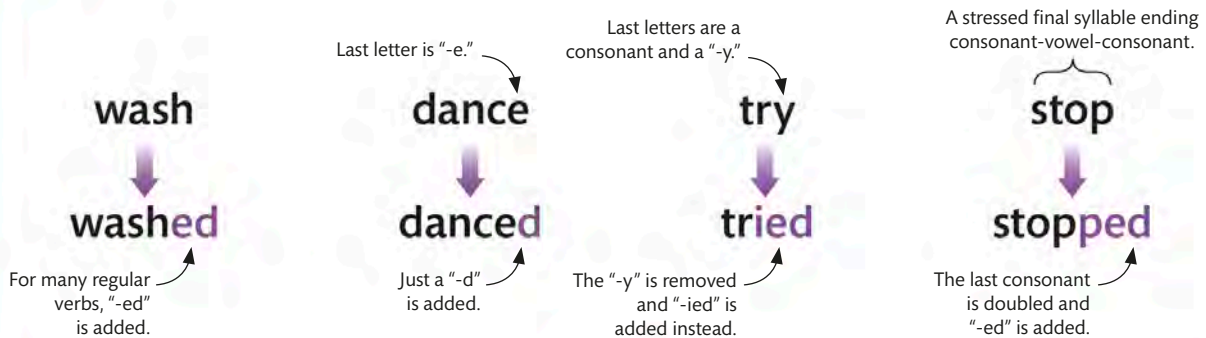
Tom usually drives to work, but yesterday he **walked** instead.

After work, Nia **listened** to music and **started** reading a new book.



## 7.2 SPELLING RULES FOR THE PAST SIMPLE

The past simple of all regular verbs ends in “-ed,” but for some verbs, there are some spelling changes, too.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES




**jump**  
↓  
**jumped**



**arrive**  
↓  
**arrived**



**carry**  
↓  
**carried**



**drop**  
↓  
**dropped**



**work**  
↓  
**worked**



**save**  
↓  
**saved**



**cry**  
↓  
**cried**



**hop**  
↓  
**hopped**



**play**  
↓  
**played**



**decide**  
↓  
**decided**



**hurry**  
↓  
**hurried**



**step**  
↓  
**stepped**

### 7.3 IRREGULAR VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

Some verbs do not take "-ed" to form the past simple. There are no specific rules about how to form irregular verbs in the past simple.



#### COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

|      |      |     |     |      |     |
|------|------|-----|-----|------|-----|
| go   | have | do  | put | come | see |
| ↓    | ↓    | ↓   | ↓   | ↓    | ↓   |
| went | had  | did | put | came | saw |

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I **swam** in the 500m race.



Sam **ate** two pizzas.



I **came** to the US in 1980.



We **went** to the zoo last week.



We **saw** some rare birds.



They **drank** all the lemonade.



I **did** really well in school.



They **had** a great vacation.



Steve **put** his cup on the table.



Sheila **drove** to the park.





## 7.4 "BE" IN THE PAST SIMPLE

The past simple of "be" is completely irregular. It is the only verb in the past simple which changes depending on the subject.

The traffic **was** bad, so we **were** late to school.



PAST



NOW

### HOW TO FORM

The past simple of "be" changes with the subject.

| SUBJECT   | "BE" | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-----------|------|------------------|
| I         | was  | late to school.  |
| You       | were |                  |
| He / She  | was  |                  |
| We / They | were |                  |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**He was** a doctor for 40 years.



**We were** at the library yesterday.



**She was** a Broadway star in the 1960s.



**There were** lots of people at the party.



**There was** a party last night.



**They were** at the movies last week.



# 08 The past simple negative

The past simple negative is used to talk about things that did not happen in the past. It is always formed the same way, unless the main verb is "be."

See also:

Past simple 7 Present simple negative 2

Types of verbs 49

## 8.1 THE PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVE

The past simple negative uses "did not" or "didn't" with the base form of the main verb. The main verb is not put into the past simple.

I played tennis last week, but I **didn't** play yesterday.



"played" is the past simple.

To make the negative, "didn't" is used with the base form.



LAST WEEK

YESTERDAY

TODAY

## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"DID NOT / DIDN'T"

BASE FORM OF VERB

REST OF SENTENCE

I

**didn't**

go

swimming.

"Didn't" or "did not" are used to make the negative, no matter what the subject is.

The base form of the main verb is used in the past simple negative.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



You **didn't** like the beach.

I **didn't** eat all the chocolate!



They **didn't** buy the big, expensive car.

Emily **didn't** enjoy the theme park as much as Zara.



She **did not** talk to anyone before the exam.

"Did not" is only used for emphasis, or in formal situations.

Hugh **did not** cycle to work today.





## COMMON MISTAKES BASE FORMS IN THE PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVE

When using the negative form of the past simple, "didn't" plus the main verb in the base form is used. The main verb is never in the past simple.

"Play" should be in the base form.

I **didn't play** tennis last night. ✓

The main verb should only go into the past simple if it's a positive statement.

I **didn't played** tennis last night. ✗

## 8.2 THE PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVE OF "BE"

To form the past simple negative of "be," "not" is added after "was" or "were."

The book **was** interesting, but the movie **was not**.

The books **were** great, but the movies **were not**.



### HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT    | "WAS / WERE" | "NOT" | REST OF SENTENCE |
|------------|--------------|-------|------------------|
| The movie  | was          | not   | interesting.     |
| The movies | were         | not   | interesting.     |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Kate **was not** feeling well.



My parents **were not** pleased.



The cat **wasn't** in the house.



"Was not" is often shortened to "wasn't."

The computers **weren't** working.



"Were not" is often shortened to "weren't."



# 09 Past simple questions

Questions in the past simple are formed using "did." For past simple questions with "be," the subject and the verb "was" or "were" are swapped around.

See also:

Past simple 7 Forming questions 34

Types of verbs 49

## 9.1 QUESTIONS IN THE PAST SIMPLE

Use "did" plus the base form of the verb to ask a question in the past simple.

In the statement the main verb is in the past simple.

They **bought** a new car.

**Did** they **buy** a new car?

"Did" goes before the subject.

The main verb is in its base form.

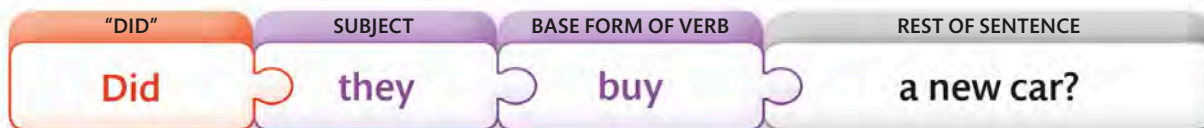


She **visited** her parents last week.

**Who** **did** she **visit** last week?

You can add question words to ask open questions.

## HOW TO FORM



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Did** they **have** a good time?



**Did** you **read** a book on the beach?



**Did** Ray **drink** all the milk?



**Where** **did** she **meet** her friends?



Add question words to make open questions.

**When** **did** he **go** to the gym?



**Why** **did** you **buy** so much food?



## 9.2 QUESTIONS IN THE PAST SIMPLE WITH "BE"

To make a question using the verb "be" in the past simple, swap the order of the subject and "was" or "were."

In a statement, the subject comes before the verb.

**She was** excited.

**You were** excited.

**Was she** excited?

**Were you** excited?

In a question, the verb and the subject swap places.

The subject comes after the verb.



### HOW TO FORM

| "WAS / WERE" | SUBJECT           | REST OF SENTENCE |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Was          | I / he / she / it | excited?         |
| Were         | you / we / they   |                  |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Was he** good at playing tennis?



**Was there** any cake at the party?



**Were they** surprised by you?



**Were we** the last ones to arrive?



**Why was she** late for the party?



**What were the lectures** about?



**What was that song** called?



**What was the weather** like?



Add question words to make open questions.

# 10 The past continuous

The past continuous is used in English to talk about actions or events that were in progress at some time in the past. It is formed with “was” or “were” and a present participle.

See also:

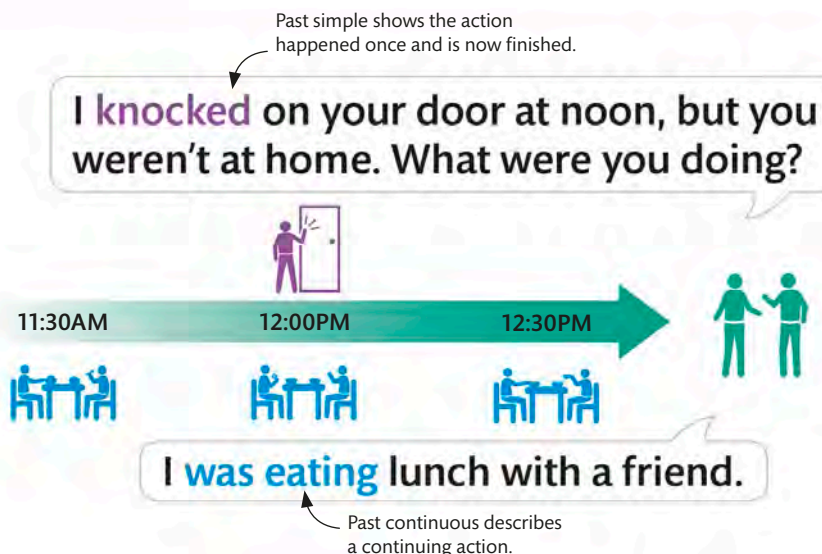
Past simple 7

Infinitives and participles 51

## 10.1 THE PAST CONTINUOUS

English uses the past continuous to talk about ongoing actions that were in progress at a certain time in the past.

The past continuous shows the action went on for some time, but is now finished.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

This time last week,  
**we were hiking** in Peru.



He didn't go out because  
**he was working** late.



When I lost my camera,  
**we were swimming** in the sea.

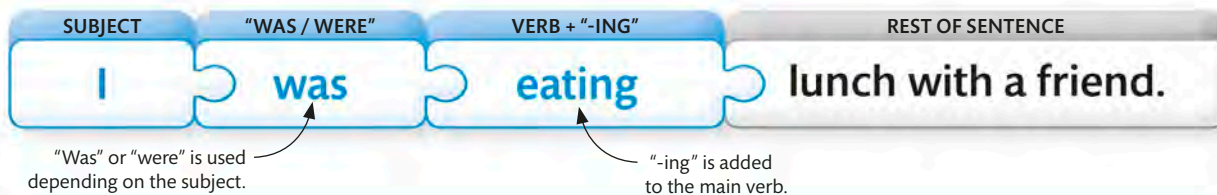


The last time I saw him,  
**he was washing** his car.



## HOW TO FORM

“Was” or “were” followed by the present participle form the past continuous.





## 10.2 THE PAST CONTINUOUS FOR SCENE-SETTING

The past continuous is often used in storytelling to set a scene or describe a situation.



It was a beautiful day.  
The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.  
Children **were laughing** and **playing** in the street.

## 10.3 THE PAST CONTINUOUS AND THE PAST SIMPLE

When English uses the past continuous and past simple together, the past continuous describes a longer, background action, and the past simple describes a shorter action that interrupts the background action.

CONTINUING BACKGROUND ACTION

INTERRUPTING MAIN ACTION

I **was taking** a photo when **a monkey grabbed** my camera.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

He **was sunbathing** when it **started** to rain.

She **was sleeping** when the phone **rang**.



I **was mowing** the lawn when you **called**.

I **was having** a bath when you **knocked**.



# 11 The present perfect simple

The present perfect simple is used to talk about events in the recent past that still have an effect on the present moment. It is formed with “have” and a past participle.

See also:

Past simple 7 Present perfect continuous 12  
Infinitives and participles 51

## 11.1 PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect can be used to talk about the past in a number of different ways:

To give new information or news.

**Hi! I have arrived** in London!  
My plane landed five minutes ago.



To talk about a repeated action that continues to happen over a period of time.

**I have visited** California every summer since I was 18.



To talk about an event that started in the past and is still happening now.

**Olivia has gone** on a trip to Egypt.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES THE PRESENT PERFECT

Look! **I've cooked** dinner for us.



**You haven't cleared** the table.  
It's a mess!



**John has just washed** the dishes.



**Have you cleaned up** your bedroom?



## HOW TO FORM



“Has” is used for  
“he,” “she,” and “it.”



## 11.2 REGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES

Regular past participles are formed by adding "-ed" to the base form.

|       |   |         |
|-------|---|---------|
| ask   | → | asked   |
| call  | → | called  |
| help  | → | helped  |
| need  | → | needed  |
| play  | → | played  |
| talk  | → | talked  |
| walk  | → | walked  |
| want  | → | wanted  |
| watch | → | watched |
| work  | → | worked  |

## 11.3 IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES

English has a lot of irregular past participles, which sometimes look very different from the base form.

|      |   |        |
|------|---|--------|
| be   | → | been   |
| buy  | → | bought |
| come | → | come   |
| do   | → | done   |
| have | → | had    |
| give | → | given  |
| go   | → | gone   |
| make | → | made   |
| say  | → | said   |
| see  | → | seen   |

## ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES PAST SIMPLE FORMS AND PAST PARTICIPLES

It is important not to mix up past simple forms with past participles.

This is the past participle of "see."  
**I have seen** lots of great things here. ✓

**I have saw** lots of great things here. ✗

This is the past simple form of "see," and shouldn't be used in perfect tenses.

## 11.4 "GONE / BEEN"

"Be" and "go" are both used in the present perfect to talk about going somewhere, but they have different meanings.



I haven't seen Joan recently. Where is she?

She's **gone** to Florida.

She is still in Florida.



Hi, Joan. You're looking well.

Yes, I've **been** to Florida.

She went to Florida, but now she is back home.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Where's Ben?



He's **gone** to the mall.



You look relaxed.

Yes, **we've been** in Bermuda. We had a great time.



Where's Ariana?



She's **gone** windsurfing.



Your hair looks great!

Thanks! I've **just been** to the hair salon.



Where are Julie and Jack?



They've **gone** to see a play.



Where have you been?

**We've been** to visit Joan in the hospital. She's not very well.

## 11.5 THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE AND THE PAST SIMPLE

The past simple is used to talk about something that happened at a definite time. The present perfect is used when a particular time is not specified.

A specific date, 2010, is given, so the past simple is used.

Have you ever been to France?

Yes, I **visited** Paris in 2010.



2010



NOW

There's no specific date, so the present perfect is used.

Yes, I **have visited** Paris many times.



2003



2008



2010



2014



NOW

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

#### PAST SIMPLE

I **saw** a great movie last week.



Jo **didn't climb** Mount Fuji last year.



Madison **ate** too much last night.



#### PRESENT PERFECT

I **haven't seen** that movie.



Saki **has climbed** Mount Fuji twice.



Jack **hasn't eaten** curry before.



## 11.6 THE PRESENT PERFECT IN US ENGLISH

US English often uses the past simple when UK English would use the present perfect.



No dessert for me! I **ate** too much. (US)

No dessert for me! I **'ve eaten** too much. (UK)



I can't find my passport. **Did you see** it? (US)

I can't find my passport. **Have you seen** it? (UK)



# 12 The present perfect continuous

The present perfect continuous is used to talk about a continuing activity in the past that still has an effect on the present moment. It usually refers to the recent past.

See also:

Past simple 7 Present perfect simple 11

Infinitives and participles 51

## 12.1 THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The present perfect continuous describes an activity that took place over a period of time in the recent past. The activity might just have stopped or might still be happening.

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

**I have been painting** the house all day. I'm exhausted!

The past activity often affects the present moment.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

"I have" can be shortened to "I've."

**I've been cooking** this evening.  
Now I have to do the dishes.



"He has" can be shortened to "He's."

**He's been waiting** for the bus for an hour.  
He is going to be late for work.



### HOW TO FORM



Use "have" or "has," depending on the subject.

"Been" stays the same for all subjects.

"-ing" is added to the main verb.



## 12.2 THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS AND THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

The present perfect continuous is used to show that an activity in the past was in progress. It is possible that the activity is still taking place.

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

**I've been fixing** my car. I'm covered in oil.



The present perfect simple is used to show that an activity in the past is finished.

### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

**I've fixed** my car. Now I can drive to work again.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I've been cooking** dinner.  
It will be ready soon.



**I've cooked** dinner.  
It's ready now.

**Vicky has been running**  
today. Now she's really tired!



**Vicky has just run** a race.  
Now she's receiving a medal.

**I've been eating** too  
much cake. I must eat less!



**I've eaten** all the cake.  
The plate is empty.

**We've been looking** at  
houses. We want to move.



**We've bought** a new house.  
We're moving in June.

# 13 The past perfect simple

English uses the past perfect simple with the past simple to talk about two or more events that happened at different times in the past.

See also:

Past simple **7** Present perfect simple **11**  
Past perfect continuous **14** Participles **51**

## 13.1 THE PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

When talking about two events that happened at different times in the past, the past simple describes the event that is closest to the time of speaking. The past perfect describes an event further back in the past.

PAST PERFECT SIMPLE                      PAST SIMPLE

The train **had left** before we **arrived** at the station.



8:10PM



8:20PM

NOW

Pablo **had gone** to work when I **knocked** on his door.



7:00AM



7:30AM

NOW

## HOW TO FORM

Use "had" followed by the past participle to form the past perfect.

SUBJECT

"HAD"

PAST PARTICIPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

The train

had

left

before we arrived at the station.

"Had" does not change with the subject.

The past participle expresses the action in the past.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

He **had cooked** dinner before Sally **got back** from work.



She **had** already **read** the play by the time she **went** to see it.



The traffic **was** bad because a car **had broken down** on the road.



When we **arrived** at the stadium, the game **had** already **started**.



Even if the past simple action is first in the sentence, it still happened later.

## 13.2 THE PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT

### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

The present perfect is used to talk about an action that took place in the recent past and is still relevant to the present moment.



ONE HOUR AGO



NOW

I'm so excited.  
I have just passed  
my driving test.

### PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

The past perfect is used to talk about an action that took place before another moment in the past.



ONE HOUR BEFORE



PAST



NOW

I was so excited.  
I had just passed  
my driving test.



# 14 The past perfect continuous

English uses the past perfect continuous with the past simple to talk about an activity that was in progress before another action or event happened.

See also:

Past simple 7 Present perfect continuous 12

Infinitives and participles 51

## 14.1 THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The past simple refers to a specific completed event in the past. The past perfect continuous describes a repeated action or continuing activity that was taking place before that completed event.

### PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

He **had been studying** English for two years before he **went** to London.

### PAST SIMPLE



TWO YEARS BEFORE

PAST

NOW

By the time Katie **arrived** home, she **had been driving** for six hours.



SIX HOURS BEFORE

PAST

NOW

## HOW TO FORM

The past perfect continuous is formed using "had been" plus a present participle.

SUBJECT

"HAD BEEN"

VERB + "-ING"

REST OF SENTENCE

He

had been

studying

English for two years.

"Had been" doesn't change with the subject.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



She **decided** to buy a new car because her old one **hadn't been working** for weeks.



I **went** to see the doctor after I'd **been feeling** unwell for a few days.



The band **had been rehearsing** every day, so they **won** the competition.



I **had been training** to be a dancer until I **broke** my leg.

## 14.2 THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS AND PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The present perfect continuous is used to talk about an action in progress or repeated activity that was taking place until the present moment.



TWO HOURS AGO

NOW

I'm really thirsty.  
I **have been cycling**  
for two hours.

### PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The past perfect continuous is used to talk about an ongoing action or repeated activity that was taking place until another specified moment in the past.



TWO HOURS BEFORE

PAST

NOW

I **was** really thirsty.  
I **had been cycling**  
for two hours.

# 15 “Used to” and “would”

When talking about habits or states in the past, “used to” or “would” are often used. English often uses these forms to contrast the past with the present.

See also:

Present simple **1** Past simple **4**

Past continuous **10** Adverbs of frequency **102**

## 15.1 “USED TO”

“Used to” can be used with the base form of a verb to talk about past habits.

Refers to a past habit.  
**We used to play tennis every day, but now we prefer golf.**



“Used to” can also be used to talk about fixed states at some indefinite time in the past.

Refers to a past state.  
**We used to live in London before we moved to Sydney.**



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Did you use to ride** a scooter when you were a student?



**I used to eat** lunch on my own, but now I sit with friends.



**I used to eat** meat, but now I'm a vegetarian.



“Used” becomes “use” in questions and negative forms.  
**I didn't use to believe** in ghosts until I visited a haunted house.



**We didn't use to think** England was cold until we moved here.



**I didn't use to be** afraid of spiders until I visited Australia.



## ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES “USED TO” AND THE PAST CONTINUOUS

When talking about habits in the past, “used to” should be used. It is incorrect to use the past continuous in this context.

We **used to play** lots of board games when we were younger. ✓

We **were playing** lots of board games when we were younger. ✗

The past continuous shouldn't be used to talk about past habits.

## 15.2 ANOTHER WAY TO SAY “USED TO” WITH HABITS

“Used to” can be replaced by “would” in writing and formal speech, but only to talk about past habits. These statements often include a reference to time to describe when, or how often something happened.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



When I was little, we **would go** for a picnic every Saturday.



Whenever there were sports on TV, we just **wouldn't do** our homework.



When I was a student in college, I **would spend** as little as possible.



Before I moved abroad, I **wouldn't try** anything new.

## ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES “WOULD” WITH STATES

“Would” cannot be used to talk about states in the past. “Used to” must be used instead.

We **used to live** in London before we moved to Sydney. ✓

We **would live** in London before we moved to Sydney. ✗

“Would” cannot be used in this way with state verbs.



# 16 Past tenses overview

## 16.1 PAST TENSES

The **past simple** refers to a single, completed action in the past.

Phil **washed** his car on Tuesday.

This is a completed action in the past that is now over.

The **past continuous** refers to a continuing action in the past.

The last time I saw Phil, he **was washing** his car.

At that moment, he was in the process of washing his car.

The **present perfect simple** refers to an unfinished action or series of actions that started in the past, or past actions that still have a consequence in the present moment.

Eve **has arrived** in London.

Eve is still in London, so it is still relevant to the present moment.

The **present perfect continuous** refers to a continuing activity in the past that still has a consequence in the present moment.

I **have been** painting the house all day. I'm exhausted!

This is a consequence in the present moment.

## 16.2 PAST SIMPLE AND PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

The **past simple** is used to refer to single, completed actions or events in the past. These no longer have a consequence in the present moment.



I **wrote** my essay about Ancient Greece.

The essay is finished, so the past simple is used.



I **lost** my keys, but I **found** them on my desk.

This is no longer relevant to the present moment, because the keys were found.

The **present perfect simple** is used to refer to actions or events in the past that are unfinished, or still have consequences in the present moment.



I **have written** half of my essay, but I need to finish it.

The essay is unfinished, so the present perfect simple is used.



I **have lost** my keys. I can't find them anywhere!

The keys are still lost in the present moment, so the present perfect simple is used.



There are eight different ways to talk about the past in English. The differences between the past simple and the present perfect simple are particularly important.

See also:

Past simple 7 Present perfect simple 11  
Infinitives and participles 51

The **past perfect simple** refers to an action or event that took place before another action or event in the past.

The game **had started** when I arrived at the stadium.

The **past perfect continuous** refers to a continuing action or event that was taking place before another action or event that happened in the past.

I **had been feeling** unwell for days, so I went to the doctor.

"**Used to**" and "**Would**" are used to talk about repeated actions in the past that no longer happen.

I **{ used to / would }** go to Spain every year.

"**Used to**" can also be used to refer to a fixed state at some indefinite time in the past that is no longer true.

I **used to** live in London.

"Live" is a state, so  
"would" can't be used.

## 16.3 KEY LANGUAGE NARRATIVE TENSES

Narrative tenses are types of past tense that are used when telling a story.

The **past continuous** is used to set the scene. The **past simple** describes actions in the story.

The **past perfect** is used to talk about things that happened before the beginning of the story.

A crowd of people **were celebrating** the New Year when one of the young men **kneeled down** in front of his girlfriend and **asked** her to marry him. He **had planned** everything beforehand.



# 17 The future with “going to”

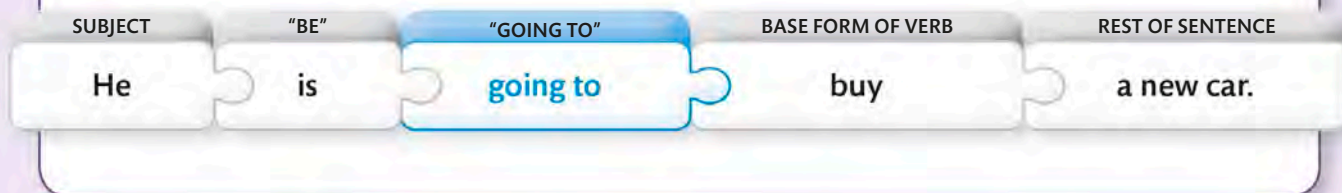
Future forms in English are formed using auxiliary verbs. One of the most commonly used constructions is “going to” plus the base form of the main verb.

See also:

The future with “will” 18

Future continuous 20 Future in the past 22

## 17.1 HOW TO FORM THE FUTURE WITH “GOING TO”



## 17.2 “GOING TO” FOR FUTURE PLANS

“Going to” is used to talk about future events that have been planned in advance, rather than decided upon at the time of speaking.

I’m **going to** buy a new car.

Base form of verb.



We are **going to** cook dinner tonight.

“Be” matches the subject of the sentence.

“Going to” doesn’t change with the subject.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I’m **going to** start reading this book soon.



Sam’s **going to** get fit before his next birthday.



I’m **not going to** eat any chocolate this month.

“Not” is added after the verb “be” to make the negative.



We’re **going to** cycle from Boston to Cape Cod next weekend.



### 17.3 "GOING TO" FOR PREDICTIONS

"Going to" is also used to make predictions when there is evidence in the present moment.

"Going to" gives the prediction.

Look at those clouds. It's **going to** rain soon.

Evidence in the present moment means that you can make a prediction.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Oh no! She's **going to** slip and fall over.



That hill is too steep. Jon is **going to** crash!



They're **going to** break a window if they're not careful.



Look! The waiter is **going to** drop those plates.



He's wearing a raincoat, so he's **not going to** get wet.



Oh dear, I think she's **going to** fall off that ladder!



### 17.4 QUESTIONS WITH "GOING TO"

Questions with "going to" are formed by swapping the subject and "be."

**Michelle is going to** be at the meeting.



**Is Michelle going to** be at the meeting?

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Is Rhian going to** come to work tomorrow?



**Is Tim going to** be at the party?



**What are you going to** wear to the party?



**When is he going to** get here?





# 18 The future with “will”

“Will” is used to form some future tenses in English. It can be used in several different ways, which are all different from the future with “going to.”

**See also:**

The future with “going to” 17  
Infinitive and participles 51

## 18.1 HOW TO FORM THE FUTURE WITH “WILL”



## 18.2 THE FUTURE USING “WILL”

English uses “will” when talking about the future in four main ways:

To make a prediction about what you think will happen.



Wait a few minutes. I think **it will stop** raining soon.

This prediction is not based on evidence.

To offer to do something for someone.



You look frozen. **I’ll make** you some hot soup.

Contraction

To make a promise.



**We’ll be** there by eight. Don’t worry!

This decision was not planned in advance.

To describe a decision you’ve just made.



I know! **I’ll buy** Aaron a surfboard for his birthday.

### TIP

Remember to use the future with “going to” for predictions based on current evidence, and for decisions made before the time of speaking.



### 18.3 "WILL" FOR PREDICTIONS

"Will" is used to talk about predictions about the future when there is no firm evidence for that prediction.



This movie is great. You **will** love it.

There is no firm evidence that the person will like the movie.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The mall **will** be so busy this afternoon.



**They'll** enjoy their trip to Venice.



Jane **will** probably like the new house. It's really nice.

"Probably" means something is likely, but not definite.



**She'll** be really angry when she finds out.



### 18.4 "WILL" FOR QUICK DECISIONS

"Will" is used to describe quick decisions that someone has made at the time of speaking. They are often a solution to an unexpected problem.



"Will" shows you have just made the decision.

Oh, it's raining! **I'll** take my umbrella.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

"Will not" or "won't" is the negative form of "will."

It's midnight. I **won't** walk home through the park.



This apple is delicious. **I'll** have another one.



"So" is often used to join a situation to a quick decision.

There's no juice, so **I'll** have some water instead.



The car has broken down, so **I'll** have to walk to work.



## 18.5 "WILL" FOR MAKING OFFERS

"Will" is also used to offer to do something for someone.

You seem busy. **I'll** pick the kids up from school today.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I'll** go to the post office for you if you want.



You must be starving! **I'll** make you a sandwich.



Sit down and relax, **I'll** make you a cup of tea.



Since you cooked, **I'll** do the dishes.



## 18.6 "WILL" FOR MAKING PROMISES

"Will" can be used when making a promise.

Don't worry, **I'll** be careful.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**We'll** let you know as soon as your car's ready.



**I'll** feed the cat when I get home.



If you bring the food, **we'll** take care of the drinks.



**I'll** take care of everything while you're away.



Ben said **he'll** call us as soon as he gets home.



Don't worry, **I'll** lock the front door when I leave.



## 18.7 "THINK" WITH "WILL"

"Think" can be used with "will" to show that a prediction is just an opinion, or a decision is not final.

"That" is used after "think,"  
but it can be left out.

This is an uncertain  
prediction.



I **think** that **we'll** have  
enough food for the party.



I'm tired. I **think**  
**I'll** go to bed.

This decision is still  
being considered.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

It's cold outside, but we  
don't **think** **it'll** snow today.



"Think" is made negative, rather than "will."

If we hurry, I **think** **we'll**  
get to the airport on time.



I **think** **I'll** cook chicken for  
dinner this evening.



I **think** **I'll** take the children  
ice-skating tomorrow.



## 18.8 FUTURE WITH "SHALL"

"Shall" is used instead of "will" when asking for a decision, or making offers or suggestions. In these cases, it is only used with "I" or "we." It is rarely used in US English.

**Shall I** pick you up or **shall we** meet at the restaurant?

"Shall" is being used  
to make an offer.

"Shall" is being used  
to make a suggestion.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Shall I** cook chicken  
or beef tonight?



It's so hot in here. **Shall I**  
open a window?



I'm bored, **shall we** go  
out for a walk?



**Shall we** try to finish  
the gardening today?





# 19 The present for future events

The present simple and present continuous can be used to talk about future events that are already planned. They are usually used with a future time word or time phrase.

See also:

Present simple **1** Present continuous **4**

Prepositions of time **107**

## 19.1 THE PRESENT SIMPLE FOR FUTURE EVENTS

The present simple can be used to talk about events that are scheduled to take place in the future.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

The train

PRESENT SIMPLE

arrives

FUTURE TIME PHRASE

at 10pm tonight.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Don't forget we **have** an early meeting tomorrow morning.



The next flight to New York **departs** at 6 this evening.



The concert **is** next Wednesday. I hope we're ready by then!



The bank **opens** late tomorrow because it's the weekend.





## 19.2 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE EVENTS

The present continuous can be used to talk about pre-arranged future events. Time markers usually show whether the event is in the present or future.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

Dave

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

is playing golf

FUTURE TIME PHRASE

tomorrow.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Jack's playing soccer tomorrow.



I'm seeing a movie later.



Sue is studying this evening.



Lisa is playing golf tomorrow.



I'm having dinner with Mike next weekend.



Jay is meeting some friends tomorrow evening.



Tom and Samantha are getting married tomorrow.



I'm running a race for charity this weekend.

# 20 The future continuous

The future continuous can be formed using “will” or “going to.” It describes an event or situation that will be in progress at some point in the future.

See also:

Present continuous 4 “Will” 18

Infinitives and participles 51

## 20.1 THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH WILL

The future continuous describes an event that will be in progress at a given time in the future which is often stated. The event will start before the stated time and may continue after it.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Right now **I'm working** in a café.

In 10 years' time, I hope I **will be running** a bistro.

FUTURE CONTINUOUS



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

“WILL BE”

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

OBJECT

I

will be

running

a bistro.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

This time next week, we **will be walking** in the Andes.



Emma **will be starting** school in September.



## 20.2 THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH "ANYWAY"

The future continuous can also be used to talk about events that are going to happen as a matter of course or "anyway."

Oh no, I've run out of milk.



I can get some for you later.

No, please don't worry!



It's okay, I'll be **driving** past the store anyway.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



You can send the parcel here.  
I'll be **waiting** in the house anyway.



I can give that to Freda for you.  
I'll be **seeing** her for lunch.

"Anyway" is implied here. →

## 20.3 NEUTRAL QUESTIONS

The future continuous is also used to ask neutral questions: questions asked for information, not to make a request.

### NEUTRAL QUESTION

Future continuous. →

Will you be **coming** into work tomorrow?

Yes, I will.

OK, let's talk about the report then.



### REQUEST

Future simple. →

Will you **come** into work tomorrow please?

Sure, no problem



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Will you be **driving** past the post office later?



Will you be **attending** the meeting this afternoon?





## 20.4 THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TO TALK ABOUT THE PRESENT

You can also use the future continuous to speculate about what is happening at the present moment.

Have you noticed that Andrew isn't at work today?

It's more likely that **he'll be watching** the golf on TV!



**He'll be working** on his presentation at home.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Why isn't Xavier here today?



**He'll be finishing** off his report for the annual meeting.

Why is Nev late?



**He'll be taking** his children to school.

Where is Sarah?



**She'll be studying** in the library probably.

Is Phoebe at home?



No, she's not here. **She'll be playing** with Ciara at the park, probably.

Have you seen Roberta?



No, but she's going out later, so I think **she'll be getting** ready.



## 20.5 THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH "GOING TO"

The future continuous can sometimes be formed with "going to" instead of "will," but this is less common. It can be used in most future continuous constructions except to speculate about the present.

**I can't come out this evening.**  
**I'm going to be studying all night.**



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"BE"

"GOING TO BE"

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

**I** **am** **going to be** **studying** **all night.**

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I want to go away on Saturday, but **I'm going to be working** all weekend.



I'd love to go out on Thursday, but **I'm going to be finishing** this essay.



Shall we have lunch next week? **I'm going to be visiting** your city.



**I'm going to be staying** with my husband's family for the holidays this year.



Do you want to go to a concert tonight? My wife **is going to be performing**.



At the lecture this evening, two politicians **are going to be talking** about crime.



# 21 The future perfect

The future perfect is used to talk about an event that will overlap with, or finish before, another event in the future. It can be used in simple or continuous forms.

See also:

Infinitives and participles 51

Prepositions of time 107

## 21.1 THE FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect is used to describe an action or event that will be finished before a certain future time.

"By" has a similar meaning to "before."

They **will have built** the skyscraper **by** January.



NOW



NOVEMBER



DECEMBER



JANUARY

## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"WILL HAVE"

PAST PARTICIPLE

OBJECT

TIME PHRASE

They

will have

built

the skyscraper

by January.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Cai **will have read** all his course books by next week.



Sam **will have finished** the laundry by this afternoon.



The next time you see me, I **will have had** a haircut.



We're so late! The play **will have started** by the time we get there!



## 21.2 THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The future perfect continuous can be used to predict the length of an activity. This tense looks back from the imagined finishing time in the future.

By July, I **will have been working** here for a year.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

| TIME PHRASE | SUBJECT | "WILL HAVE BEEN" | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-------------|---------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| By July,    | I       | will have been   | working            | here for a year. |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

By the time this is all ready, Andy **will have been cooking** all day!



By the time I arrive home, I **will have been driving** for six hours.



By this time next month, I **will have been studying** English for a year!



He **will have been waiting** for two hours by the time she arrives.



This case **will have been going on** for over a year before it is settled.





# 22 The future in the past

There are a number of constructions in English that can be used to describe thoughts about the future that someone had at some point in the past.

See also:

Past continuous 10

Infinitives and participles 51

## 22.1 THE FUTURE IN THE PAST USING "WAS GOING TO"

The future in the past is used to look back on an earlier prediction. Where "going to" is used to talk about the future from the present, "was / were going to" is used to talk about a past view of it.



This traffic is awful! I think I'm going to be late for work.

I thought I was going to be late, but I'm right on time.

### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"WAS / WERE"

"GOING TO"

BASE FORM

REST OF SENTENCE

I was going to be late.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I was going to start a new book today, but I didn't have time.



Delia was going to buy a new dress, but she couldn't find one.



Mike was going to have a party, but nobody could come.



We were going to buy a new dog, but we decided to wait.



They were going to go home, but they went dancing instead.



Sorry, I interrupted. Were you going to say something?





## 22.2 THE FUTURE IN THE PAST USING "WOULD"

Where "will" is used to talk about a future event from the present, "would" is used to talk about a past view of it.



I think I **will** finish the gardening today. It shouldn't take too long.

I thought I **would** finish today, but there is still a lot left to do.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I always knew she **would** be successful.



I was told that my car **would** be fixed by now.



Did you ever think you **would** become a doctor?



I don't know where Hilda is. I thought **she'd** be here by 8pm.



## 22.3 THE FUTURE IN THE PAST USING THE PAST CONTINUOUS

The past continuous is used to talk about an arranged future event from a time in the past.



MONDAY MORNING



MONDAY AFTERNOON



NOW

Jenny **was** extremely **nervous** on Monday morning.  
She **was taking** her driving test that afternoon.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

They **were planning** to go to the beach tomorrow, but the weather's terrible.



Michelle had been cleaning all day. Her sister **was arriving** that evening.



Hugo had to go to bed early because he **was flying** early the following morning.



# 23 Future overview

## 23.1 THE FUTURE

The **present simple** can be used to talk about events that are timetabled or scheduled to take place in the future.

The train **arrives** at 10pm.

The **present continuous** can be used to talk about future arrangements and plans.

I'm **traveling** to Paris by train later this evening.



The **simple future** is the most common form used to refer to an event in the future.

It { **will**  
**is going to** } rain tomorrow.

The **future continuous** describes an event that will be in progress at a given time in the future. The event will start before the stated time and may continue after it.

It { **will**  
**is going to** } **be** raining all weekend.



## 23.2 "GOING TO" AND "WILL"

English uses both "going to" and "will" to talk about the future. They can sometimes have a very similar meaning, but there are certain situations where they mean different things.

"**Will**" is used to make predictions that aren't based on present evidence.

This is a prediction without firm evidence.

I think Number 2 **will** win.



"**Going to**" is used when there is evidence in the present moment to support a prediction.

Look, Number 2 is **going to** win.



English uses different constructions to talk about the future. These are mostly formed with the auxiliary verb "will" or a form of "be" with "going to."

**See also:**

The future with "going to" 17

The future with "will" 18

The **future perfect** is used to predict when an action or event will be finished. This tense looks back from an imagined time in the future.

They **will have** built the skyscraper by next year.

The **future perfect continuous** is used to predict the eventual duration of an activity. This tense looks back from the endpoint of the action.

By July, they **will have been working** on it for a year.



The **future in the past** describes thoughts about the future that someone had at some point in the past. There are three ways to form this construction.

The traffic was terrible, so I knew I **was going to** be late.

"Am going to" becomes  
"was going to."

"Will" becomes  
"would."

I thought I **would** finish the gardening by the end of the day.

I was nervous on Sunday night. I **was starting** a new job the next day.

"Am starting" becomes  
"was starting."

"**Will**" is used when a decision is made at the time of speaking.

I know! I'll **buy** Jo a surfboard for her birthday.

This decision was not planned in advance.



"**Going to**" is used when talking about a decision that has already been made.

I'm **going to** buy her a surfboard that I saw last week.

This decision has already been planned.





# 24 The passive

In most sentences, the subject carries out an action and the object receives it, or the result of it. In passive sentences, this is reversed: the subject receives the action.

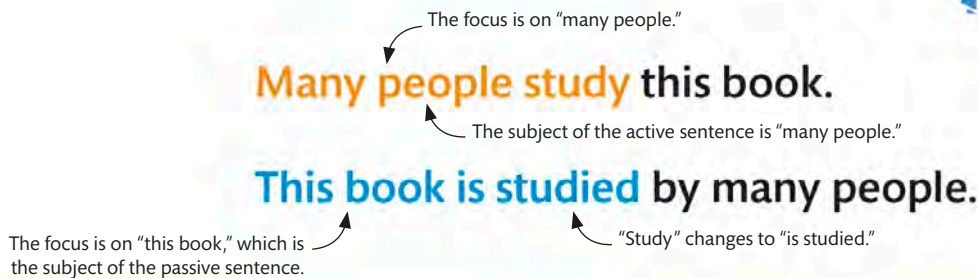
See also:

Present simple 1 Present continuous 4

Infinitives and participles 51

## 24.1 THE PRESENT SIMPLE PASSIVE

Passive sentences take emphasis away from the agent (the person or thing doing the action), and put it on the action itself, or the person or thing receiving the action. In the present simple passive, the present simple verb becomes a past participle.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The passive is used when the agent is obvious, unknown, or unimportant. It is also useful when describing a process where the result of the action is important.



## HOW TO FORM

All passives use a form of "be" with a past participle. The agent (the thing doing the action) can be introduced with "by," but the sentence would still make sense without it.





## 24.2 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS PASSIVE

The present continuous passive is used to refer to ongoing actions.



PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Developers **are building** lots of new houses in the area.

Lots of new houses **are being built** in the area.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS PASSIVE

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

You can't use the pool today because it **is being cleaned**.



I **am being interviewed** by a news channel tomorrow.



The robbery **is being investigated** by the police.



Don't worry, the food **is being cooked** as we speak.



We're living in a trailer while our house **is being rebuilt**.



Posters for the concert **are being put up** all over town.



The course **is being taught** by a well-known scientist.



I have to walk to work while my car **is being repaired**.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"AM / IS / ARE"

"BEING"

PAST PARTICIPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

New houses

are

being

built

in the area.

The thing that receives the action.

Present simple of "be."

The past participle describes what happens to the subject.

# 25 The passive in the past

English uses the passive voice in the past to stress the effect of an action that happened in the past, rather than the cause of that action.

See also:

Past simple **7** Past continuous **10**

Present perfect **11** Past perfect **13**

## 25.1 THE PAST SIMPLE PASSIVE

The past simple passive is used when referring to a single completed action in the past, focusing on the effect rather than the cause.



PAST SIMPLE

The fire **destroyed** the buildings.

PAST SIMPLE PASSIVE

The buildings **were destroyed** by the fire.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The trees **were cut down** last year.



The rail road **was damaged** during the storm.



Two people **were injured** in the accident.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"WAS / WERE"

PAST PARTICIPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

The buildings

were

destroyed

in a fire.

The thing that receives the action.

"Was" is for singular subjects, and "were" is for plural subjects.

The main verb is a past participle.

## 25.2 THE PAST CONTINUOUS PASSIVE

The past continuous can also be used in the passive voice. It is used to refer to ongoing actions in the past.

PAST CONTINUOUS

Secret agents **were watching** him.



PAST CONTINUOUS PASSIVE

He **was being watched** by secret agents.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The students **were being taught** how to write good essays.



By the time I got back to my car, it **was being taken away**.



I went for lunch while my car **was being fixed**.



The new secretary **was being shown** how to use the computer.



We bought our house while it **was being built**.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"WAS / WERE"

"BEING"

PAST PARTICIPLE

"BY" + AGENT

He

was

being

watched

by secret agents.

The thing that receives the action.

"Was" is for singular subjects, and "were" is for plural subjects.

The main verb is expressed as a past participle.



## 25.3 THE PRESENT PERFECT PASSIVE

The present perfect passive is used to talk about events in the past that still have an effect on the present moment.



PRESENT PERFECT

Don't worry, I **have fed** the cats.

PRESENT PERFECT PASSIVE

Don't worry, the cats **have been fed**.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

This door **has been painted** beautifully.



Do you know if all the lights **have been turned off**?



**Has your computer been fixed** yet? It broke months ago!



The subject and verb swap places to form questions.

The new parts **haven't been delivered** yet, so you'll have to wait.



All of the smoke detectors **have been replaced**.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"HAS / HAVE"

"BEEN"

PAST PARTICIPLE

The cats

have

been

fed.

The thing that receives the action.

"Been" stays the same no matter what the subject is.

The main verb is expressed as a past participle.



## 25.4 THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

The past perfect passive is used to refer to events that happened before another event in the past.

Unfortunately, the organizer **had canceled** the party.

PAST PERFECT

PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

Unfortunately, the party **had been canceled**.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

This part of the Arctic **had** never **been explored** before.



The class **hadn't been told** that the lecture **had been canceled**.



Sue didn't realize that the floor **had** just **been polished**.



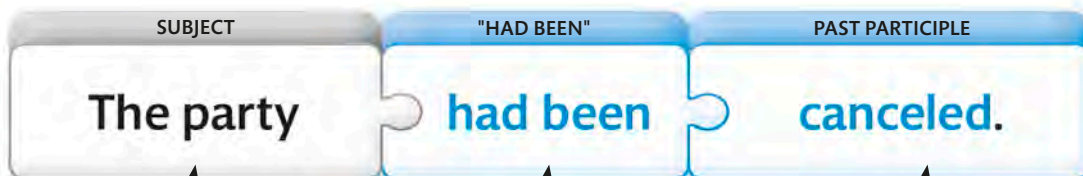
We were about to sing *Happy Birthday*, but the cake **had been eaten**!



Anna was so happy that her cat **had been found**.



### HOW TO FORM



The thing that receives the action.

"Had been" stays the same with any subject.

The main verb is expressed as a past participle.

# 26 The passive in the future

English uses the passive voice in the future to stress the effect of an action that will happen in the future, rather than the cause of that action.

See also:

Future with "will" 18 Future perfect 21  
Infinitives and participles 51

## 26.1 THE FUTURE SIMPLE PASSIVE

The future simple passive is usually formed with "will" rather than "going to."



FUTURE SIMPLE

Hopefully, the police **will catch** the thief very soon.

FUTURE SIMPLE PASSIVE

Hopefully, the thief **will be caught** very soon.

It is not known or important who will catch the thief.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Don't worry, the house **will be finished** very soon.



An email **will be sent** to you all next week with more details.



Sorry, but the power **will be turned off** between 2pm and 5pm.



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

"WILL BE"

PAST PARTICIPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

The thief

will be

caught

very soon.

The thing that  
receives the action.

"Will be" doesn't change  
with any subject.

The main verb is a  
past participle.

## 26.2 THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

The future perfect passive is used to talk about events that will be finished at some point in the future.



FUTURE PERFECT

The mechanic **will have fixed** the car by 5pm.

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

The car **will have been fixed** by 5pm.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

We think every ticket **will have been bought** before the end of the day.



Hurry up or all the good seats **will have been taken** already.



You should call early, otherwise all the tables **will have been booked**.



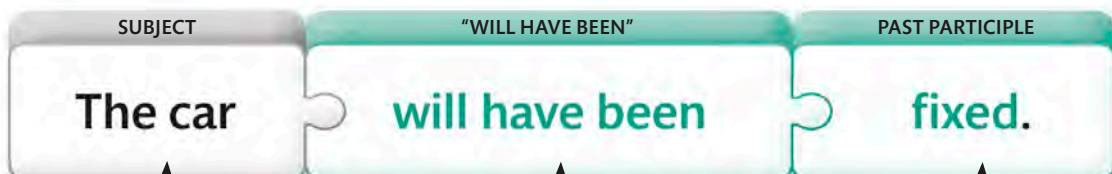
Come back tomorrow. The park **will have been cleaned** by then.



**Will** those letters **have been sent** out before lunchtime tomorrow?



### HOW TO FORM



The thing that receives the action.

"Will have been" stays the same with any subject.

The main verb is a past participle.



# 27 The passive with modals

Modal verbs in English can be used in passive forms. As with other passive constructions, the emphasis changes to the object that receives the action.

See also:

Present perfect simple 11 Passive 24

Modal verbs 56

## 27.1 MODALS IN THE PRESENT PASSIVE

Modals in passive forms don't change. The sentence starts with the modal, then the verb "be" plus the past participle.



PRESENT WITH MODAL

You **should tell** Barbara the exciting news!

PRESENT PASSIVE WITH MODAL

Barbara **should be told** the exciting news!

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



**Should** the package **be delivered** to your house or your office?

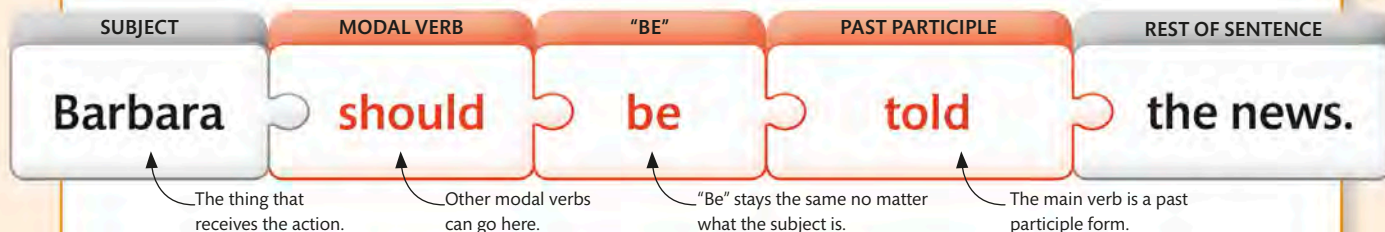


The treasure chest **can** only **be opened** with a special key.



All new employees **must be shown** what to do if there's a fire.

## HOW TO FORM





## 27.2 MODALS IN THE PERFECT PASSIVE

Modals in perfect tenses can become passive by replacing "have" with "have been."



PERFECT WITH MODAL

The managers **should have given** Daniel more time.

PERFECT PASSIVE WITH MODAL

Daniel **should have been given** more time.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

We **should have been told** that the concert was canceled!



The robber **would have been arrested** if he hadn't been so quick.



The leaking pipe **might have been fixed** now. Should we ask?



Lots of people think that the fire **could have been prevented**.



### HOW TO FORM



# 28 Other passive constructions

Many idioms in English use passive forms. Some idioms use standard rules for passive forms, while others are slightly different.

See also:

Passive voice 45 Reporting verbs 24

Defining relative clauses 81

## 28.1 REPORTING WITH PASSIVES

Some passive constructions are used to distance the writer or speaker from the facts. They are often used in academic writing or news reports.



"IT" + PASSIVE REPORTING VERB

"THAT" CLAUSE

**It has been reported** that three sailors have disappeared.

SUBJECT + PASSIVE REPORTING VERB

INFINITIVE CLAUSE

**The race is known** to be extremely dangerous.

"THERE" + PASSIVE REPORTING VERB

"TO BE / TO HAVE BEEN"

**There are said** to be at least 20 boats in the search party.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**It has been rumored** that wolves live in these woods.



**The worksite is said** to be unsafe for workers.



**There is thought** to be a problem with crime here.



**It has been revealed** that some prisoners have escaped.



**The new school is thought** to have the best teachers in the country.



**There are said** to be pros and cons to moving abroad.



## 28.2 USING "GET" IN PASSIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

"Get" can sometimes replace "be" in passive sentences.  
This form is more informal than the passive with "be."



PRESENT SIMPLE PASSIVE

Bikes **get stolen** in this town every day.

My friend's bike **got stolen** yesterday.

PAST SIMPLE PASSIVE

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The windows **get washed** once a month.



This package **got delivered** today. I wonder what it is.



My laptop **gets updated** every week by the IT team.



I hope the air conditioning **will get fixed** soon.



More and more items are **getting recycled** these days.



Did you know that the company **was getting sold**?



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

His bike

"GET / GOT"

got

PAST PARTICIPLE

stolen

REST OF SENTENCE

yesterday.

The thing that receives the action.

A form of "get" is used instead of "be."

The past participle describes what happens to the subject.



# 29 Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences are used to describe real or hypothetical results of real or hypothetical situations. They can use many different verb forms.

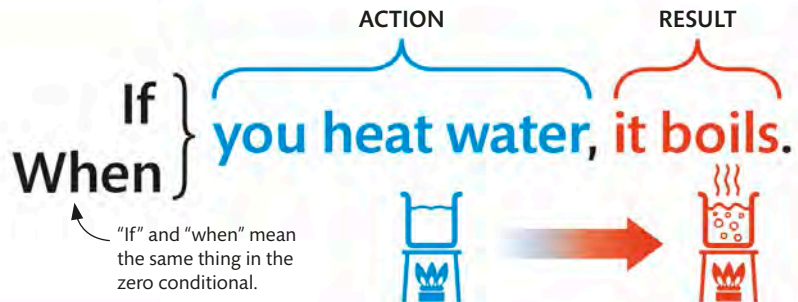
See also:

Present simple **1** Imperatives **6**

Past simple **7** Future with "will" **18**

## 29.1 THE ZERO CONDITIONAL

The zero conditional, also called the "real" conditional, refers to things that are always true. It is used to describe the direct result of an action.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**If you heat ice, it melts.**



**When you put a rock in water, it sinks.**



The result clause can go to the beginning of the sentence. The comma is removed in this case.

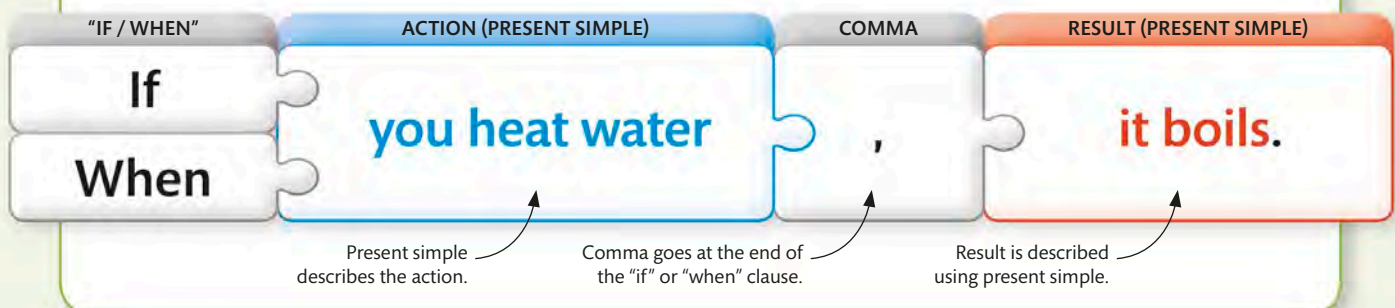
**If you drop an apple, it falls.**



**Oil floats when you pour it onto water.**



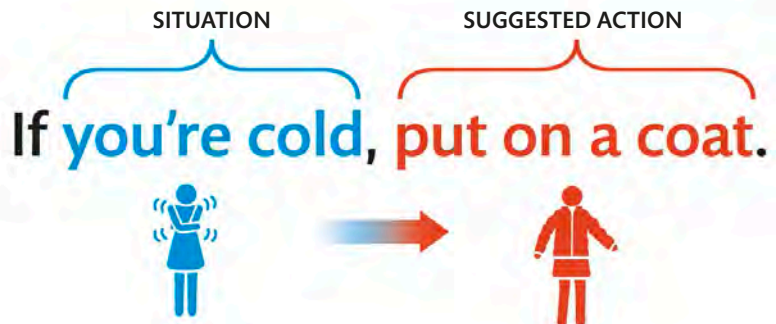
### HOW TO FORM





## 29.2 CONDITIONALS WITH IMPERATIVES

Imperatives can be used in conditional sentences. The "if" clause describes a hypothetical situation and the imperative clause describes what someone should do if that hypothetical situation actually happens.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

If **you feel sick**, **call a doctor.**



If **the dog's hungry**, **feed him.**



If **the traffic is bad**, **cycle to work.**



If **the children behave badly**, **call me.**



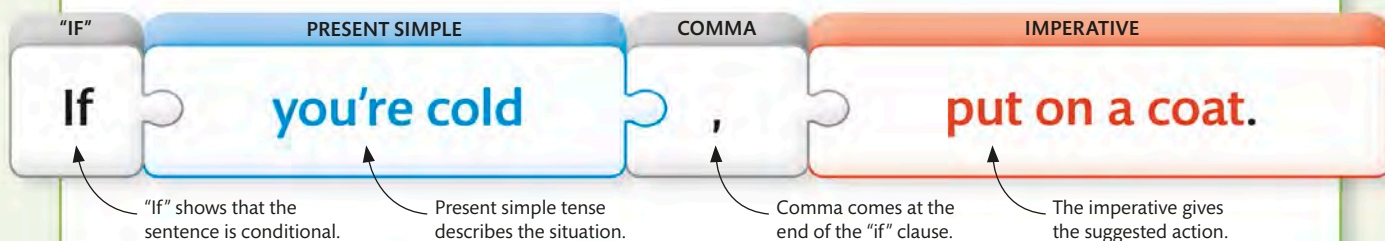
Negative  
**Don't stay up late** if **you're tired.**



The order is reversed, so there is no comma.  
**Let me know** if **you need help.**



### HOW TO FORM



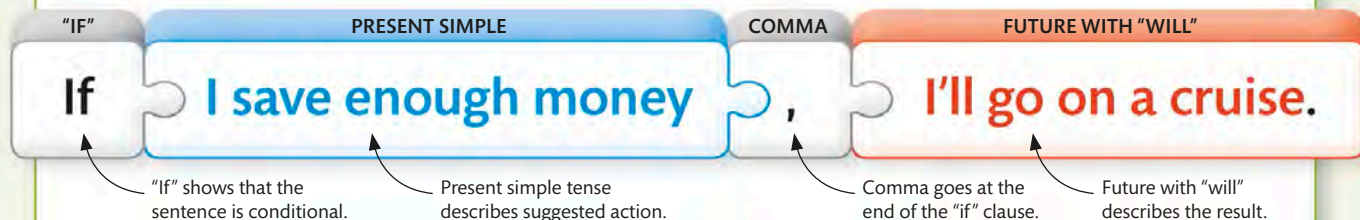
## 29.3 THE FIRST CONDITIONAL

The first conditional, also called the “future real” conditional, uses “if” to describe a realistic action that might lead to a future result.



### HOW TO FORM

The first conditional is usually introduced by an “if” clause, followed by the present simple. The future with “will” expresses the result.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**If I go jogging, I'll lose weight.**



**If it snows, I'll go skiing.**



**If we go to Africa, we'll go on safari.**



**If I get the job, I'll buy a new suit.**



**If I cook, will you do the dishes?**



**I won't go outside if it rains.**



## 29.4 THE SECOND CONDITIONAL

The second conditional, also called the “unreal” conditional, uses “if” to describe an unlikely or unreal action or event. The described result is also very unlikely.



### HOW TO FORM

The second conditional is usually introduced by an “if” clause with a past simple verb. “Would” or “could” plus the base form of the main verb expresses the result.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**If he wasn't so busy, he'd take a break.**



**If I moved to Scotland, I'd live in a cottage.**



**If I had more time, I could take up karate.**



**I'd call her if I knew her number.**



**If I saw a ghost, I would be terrified.**



**If I learned English, I could visit London.**





## 29.5 THE THIRD CONDITIONAL

The third conditional, also called the “past unreal” conditional, is used to describe unreal situations in the past. It is often used to express regret about the past because the hypothetical situation that it describes is now impossible as a consequence of another past action.



UNREAL PAST SITUATION

UNREAL PAST RESULT

**If we had left earlier, we would have caught the train.**

↖ This didn't happen.

↖ So this didn't happen either.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



**If I had woken up on time,  
I would have done my hair.**



**If you had been wearing a coat,  
you might have stayed warm.**

↖ “Might” means this possibly  
would have happened.



**If I had studied harder,  
I could have been a doctor.**

↖ “Could” means this possibly  
would have happened.



**If I had known it was your birthday,  
I would have bought you a present.**

### HOW TO FORM

“IF”

“HAD” + PAST PARTICIPLE

“WOULD / COULD / MIGHT”

“HAVE” + PAST PARTICIPLE

**If**

**we had left earlier**

**, we would**

**have caught the train.**

↖ The “if” clause is the  
unreal past condition.

↖ Using different modals changes the  
certainty of the imagined result.

↖ The conditional clause  
is the unreal result.



## 29.6 THE MIXED CONDITIONAL

### SECOND CONDITIONAL

The second conditional is used to talk about hypothetical situations in the present.

#### PAST SIMPLE



If I didn't believe in astrology,  
I wouldn't read my horoscope.

"WOULD" + INFINITIVE

### THIRD CONDITIONAL

The third conditional is used to talk about hypothetical situations in the past.

#### PAST PERFECT



If I had known he was an Aquarius,  
I would not have gone out with him.

"WOULD" + "HAVE" + PAST PARTICIPLE

### MIXED CONDITIONAL



Mixed conditionals are usually used to talk about hypothetical present results of unreal past situations.

If you had been born a month earlier,  
you would be a Virgo like me.

Unreal past.

Unreal present.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

If you hadn't forgotten to bring the keys,  
we wouldn't be locked out of the house.



Mixed conditionals refer to future situations when used with future time markers.

You would be starting at a new school tomorrow if you hadn't failed your exams.



Mixed conditionals are often used to express regret.

If I had finished my assignment sooner,  
I could be out with my friends today.



We would be on a beach in Greece by now if we hadn't missed our flight.



# 30 Other conditional sentences

English allows for some variations in conditional sentence structures. These give more information about the context of the conditional.

See also:

Future with "will" 18

Modal verbs 56

## 30.1 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES WITH MODAL VERBS

First, second, and third conditional sentences can use different modal verbs in their "result" clauses. These can be used to express uncertainty, possibility, or obligation, amongst other things.



### FIRST CONDITIONAL

In the first conditional, "will" can be replaced by a variety of modal verbs to talk about different ideas.

If I save enough money, I will buy a new car.

If I save enough money, I can buy a new car.

Different modal verbs can go here.

### SECOND CONDITIONAL

In the second conditional, "would" can be replaced by "could" or "might" to express ability, possibility, or uncertainty.

If I saved enough money, I would buy a new car.

If I saved enough money, I { could might } buy a new car.

### THIRD CONDITIONAL

In the third conditional, "would" can be replaced by "could" or "might" to express ability, possibility, or uncertainty.

If I had saved enough money, I would have bought a new car.

If I had saved enough money, I { could might } have bought a new car.

### 30.2 FIRST CONDITIONAL WITH "UNLESS"

"Unless" can be used instead of "if" in conditional sentences. "Unless" means "if... not," so the future result depends on the suggested action not happening.



If you don't  
Unless you } study hard, you will fail your exams.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

If you don't  
Unless you } get up now, you'll be late for work.



I'll be angry { if he doesn't turn  
unless he turns } that music down.



### 30.3 FORMAL THIRD CONDITIONAL

The third conditional can be made more formal by swapping "had" with the subject and dropping "if."



If you had attended the meeting, you would have met the manager.



Had you attended the meeting, you would have met the manager.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Had I worked harder at school,  
I could have studied medicine.

Had you listened to the directions,  
we would have arrived on time.

Had she woken up earlier,  
she wouldn't have been late.

Had we bought that house,  
we couldn't have afforded this trip.



# 31 Conditional sentences overview

## 31.1 TYPES OF CONDITIONAL

**The zero conditional**  
is used to talk about situations that will always happen. It is used to talk about general truths.

PRESENT SIMPLE  
**If you play the violin out of tune, it sounds terrible.**  
PRESENT SIMPLE



**The second conditional**  
is used to talk about hypothetical situations that are very unlikely to happen, but are usually still possible.

PAST SIMPLE  
**If I practiced more, that song would sound better.**  
"WOULD" + BASE FORM



## 31.2 USING COMMAS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

When the action comes before the result, a comma separates the two clauses of the conditional sentence. However, when the result comes first, no comma is used.

When **you freeze water**, **ice forms**.

A comma is used if the action comes first.

**Ice forms** when **you freeze water**.

The result can come at the beginning of the sentence.

"If" or "when" can sit between the action and result, without a comma.



There are four types of conditional sentences. The zero conditional refers to real situations, but the first, second, and third conditionals all refer to hypothetical situations.

See also:

Present simple **1** Past simple **7**

Past perfect simple **13** Modal verbs **56**

### The first conditional

is used to talk about hypothetical situations that are likely to happen.

PRESENT SIMPLE

If I practice really hard, this song will sound great.

"WILL" + BASE FORM



### The third conditional

is used to talk about hypothetical situations that definitely will not happen. The result is no longer possible because of the imaginary cause in the past.

PAST PERFECT

If I had practiced more, I would have sounded better.

"WOULD" + "HAVE" + PAST PARTICIPLE



## COMMON MISTAKES USING OTHER TENSES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

"Will," "would," and "would have" should not be used in the "if" clause when forming conditional sentences.

If I **will** work really hard, this piece will sound great. ❌

↖ "Will" doesn't go in the "if" clause.

If I **would** practice more, that piece would sound better. ❌

↖ "Would" doesn't go in the "if" clause.

If I **would have** practiced more, I would have sounded better. ❌

↖ "Would have" doesn't go in the "if" clause.

# 32 Future possibilities

There are many ways to talk about imaginary future situations. Different structures can be used to indicate whether a situation is likely or unlikely.

See also:

Present simple **1** Past simple **7**

Past perfect simple **13**

## 32.1 LIKELY FUTURE POSSIBILITIES

"What if" or "suppose" followed by the present tense can be used to express a future outcome that is likely to happen.

"What if" means "what would happen if an imagined situation occurred?"

**What if**  
**Suppose**

I **fail** my exams? I won't be able to go to college.

Present tense shows the speaker believes this is likely to happen.

"Suppose" refers to the consequences of an imagined situation.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**What if** the computer **crashes**?  
I will lose all my work.

**Suppose** they **assess** our coursework.  
We will have to keep a portfolio.

## 32.2 UNLIKELY FUTURE POSSIBILITIES

"What if" or "suppose" followed by the past simple can be used to express a future outcome that is possible, but unlikely to happen.

Just imagine! **What if**  
**Suppose** we all **got** 100% on our exams?

The past tense shows the speaker thinks this is unlikely to happen.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Suppose** I **got caught** cheating.  
My parents would be furious.

**What if** our flight **was canceled**?  
We'd be stuck here!

### 32.3 THINGS THAT COULD HAVE HAPPENED

"What if" and "suppose" can also be used with the past perfect to describe situations that were possible in the past, but that didn't happen, or might not have happened.



That was so dangerous! { What if  
Suppose } you **had broken** your leg?

The past perfect shows that this didn't happen, but it was possible.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

We were lucky to catch that plane!  
**What if** it **hadn't been** delayed?

**Suppose** you **had taken** the job.  
We would have had to move.

### 32.4 IN CASE

"In case" or "just in case" plus the present tense are used to show planning for a possible future situation.

Make sure the windows are shut  
**in case** the cat **tries** to escape.



Present tense.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

You should take an umbrella with you **in case** it **rains** later.

We should start organizing our project work, **just in case** they **want** to see it.

You should write these instructions down **in case** you **forget** what to do.

You should leave for the airport early, **just in case** the traffic **is** bad.

"Just" is added to "in case" to talk about preparation for a situation that is less likely.



# 33 Wishes and regrets

English uses the verb “wish” to talk about present and past regrets. The tense of the verb that follows “wish” affects the meaning of the sentence.

See also:

Past simple 7 Past perfect simple 13

Modal verbs 56

## 33.1 “WISH” AND PAST SIMPLE

“Wish” is used with the past simple to express regrets and desires about the present, which could still happen or come true.

I **wish** I **earned** more money.

The past simple is used here to talk about the present.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Mike’s apartment is too small. He **wishes** he **lived** in a bigger house.



They **wish** the weather **was** better so they could go to the beach.



You’re always busy, I **wish** you **didn’t have to** work so hard.



Sandra hates her job. She **wishes** she **worked** on a farm.



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

“WISH”

SUBJECT

PAST SIMPLE

REST OF SENTENCE

I

**wish**

I

**earned**

**more money.**

“Wish” or “wishes,” depending on the subject.

The past simple expresses wishes or regrets about the present.

### 33.2 "WISH" AND PAST PERFECT

"Wish" is used with the past perfect to talk about regrets about the past. This form is used when it is too late for the wish to come true.



I've failed my exams. I **wish** I **had studied** harder.

The past perfect is used to talk about a regret in the past.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

He's very tired. He **wishes** he **had gone** to bed early last night.



My car's useless! I **wish** I **hadn't bought** such an old one.



Jo is really bored. She **wishes** she **had gone out** with her friends.



We're totally lost! I **wish** we **had brought** a map.



I **wish** I **had known** how big this dress was before I bought it.



There was a meteor shower last night. I **wish** I **had seen** it.



#### HOW TO FORM



"Wish" or "wishes," depending on the subject.

The past perfect expresses regrets about the past.

### 33.3 "WISH" FOR FUTURE HOPES

"Wish" can also be used to talk about hopes for the future. "Wish" with "could" is usually used when someone is expressing a desire to do something themselves.

I **wish** I **could** move somewhere warm.

[I would like to be able to move somewhere warmer.]



"Wish" with "would" is used when someone is expressing a desire for someone else to do something.

She **wishes** her teacher **would** give her less work.

[She wants her teacher to give out less homework in the future.]



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I **wish** I **could** get a new job in a different department.



Colin is always talking about cars. I **wish** he **would** stop.



I **wish** I **could** go to the concert with my friends this evening.



I **wish** they **wouldn't** make it so hard to buy tickets online.



Irene **wishes** she **could** find her diamond necklace.



Jenny's mother **wishes** she **would** clean her room.



Matteo **wishes** he **could** play the violin.



Noel **wishes** Adrienne **would** stop singing.



He **wishes** he **could** understand his homework.



Madge **wishes** Greg **wouldn't** drive so fast.





### 33.4 ANOTHER WAY TO SAY "I WISH"

#### PRESENT REGRETS

Stronger regrets about the present can be expressed by using "if only" and the past simple.



These mountains are incredible!  
**If only I knew** how to ski.

#### PAST REGRETS

Stronger regrets about the past can be expressed by using "if only" and the past perfect.



I really wanted to take pictures.  
**If only I'd charged** the battery.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I love the sound of the guitar.  
**If only I played** it better.

I'm sure the teacher explained this. **If only I remembered** it!

The show is completely sold out!  
**If only I'd arrived** sooner.

I couldn't finish the marathon.  
**If only I had trained** harder.

### 33.5 PAST REGRETS

"Should have" or "ought to have" are used to express regret that something did or didn't happen in the past.

This bill is so big. I { **should have**  
**ought to have** } **used** less electricity.

Past participle.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Maybe I **should have** used energy-saving light bulbs.



The negative form "ought not to have" is rarely used in UK English and never used in US English.  
I **shouldn't have** fallen asleep with the TV on.



# 34 Forming questions

If a statement uses “be” or an auxiliary verb, its question form is made by inverting that verb and the subject. Any other question is formed by adding “do” or “does.”

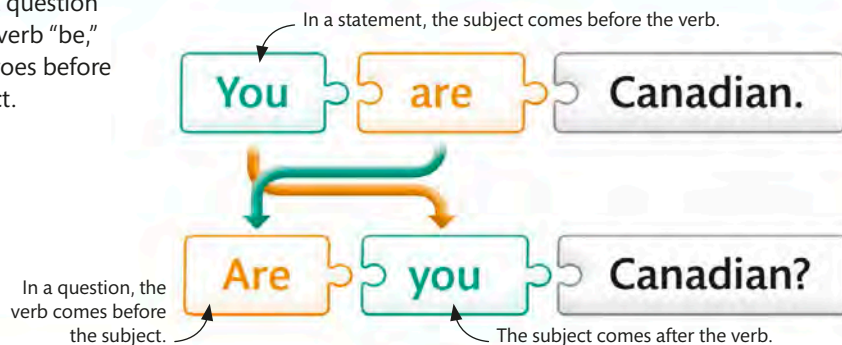
See also:

Present simple 1 Types of verbs 49

Modal verbs 56

## 34.1 QUESTIONS WITH “BE”

To make a question using the verb “be,” the verb goes before the subject.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Sorry, **am** I early?



**Are** you tired?



**Are** they engineers?



**Is** Frieda here yet?



**Is** she still a student?



**Aren't** you bored?

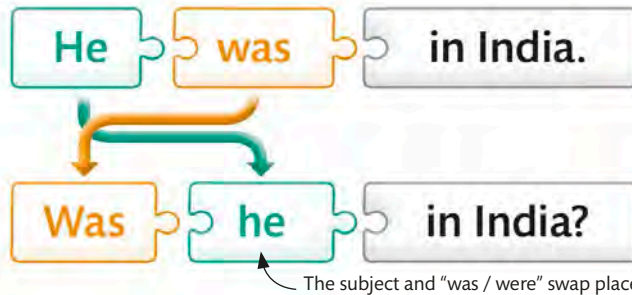


## HOW TO FORM

| “BE” | SUBJECT         | REST OF SENTENCE |
|------|-----------------|------------------|
| Am   | I               | Canadian?        |
| Are  | you / we / they |                  |
| Is   | he / she / it   |                  |

## 34.2 QUESTIONS WITH "BE" IN THE PAST

To ask questions about the past using the verb "be," the subject and verb swap places.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Was it nice and sunny yesterday?



Were there any snacks at the party?



Was he good at playing tennis?

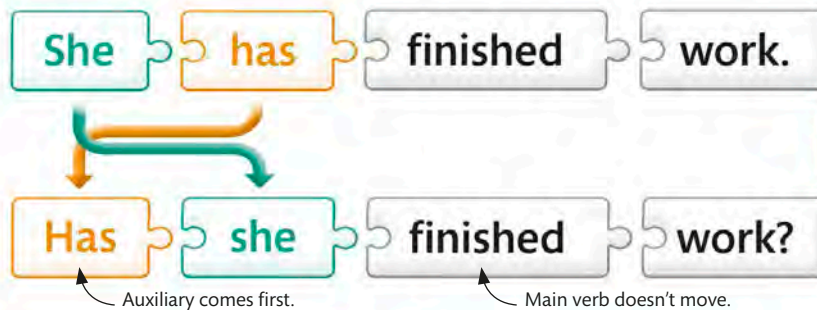


Were you at the party last night?



## 34.3 QUESTIONS WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

For questions including an auxiliary verb, such as "have," "will," and "could," the subject and the auxiliary verb swap places. The main verb stays where it is.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Could you tell me where the stadium is, please?



Have they decided when they're going to get married yet?



If a question has more than one auxiliary verb, only the first one moves.

Should we have called ahead before coming?



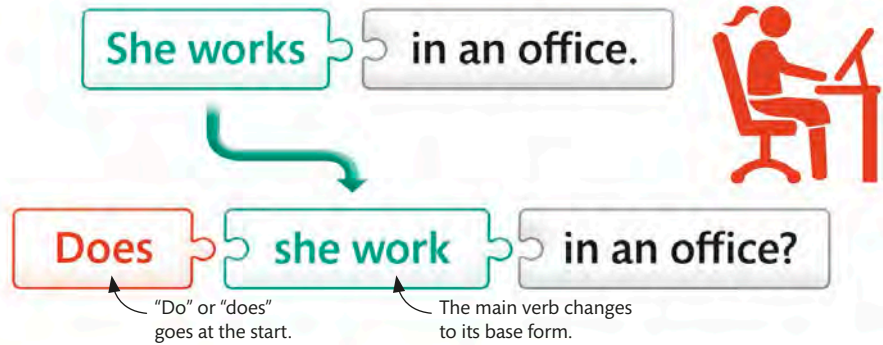
Will you have finished that report by tomorrow?





### 34.4 QUESTIONS WITH "DO" AND "DOES"

Questions in the present simple without the verb "be" or an auxiliary verb start with "do" or "does" and have the main verb in its base form. The subject and main verb do not swap around.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Do they live in Paris?



Does he get up very early every morning?



Do you speak English?



Does your father work on a farm?



Do I know you?



Does she still play the piano?



Don't you have any vegetarian food on the menu?



Doesn't this office have air conditioning?

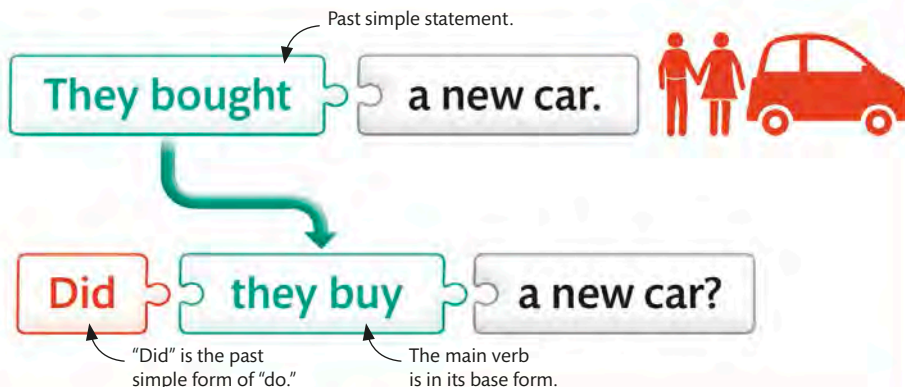


#### HOW TO FORM

| "DO / DOES" | SUBJECT             | BASE FORM OF VERB | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Do          | I / you / we / they | work              | in an office?    |
| Does        | he / she / it       | work              | in an office?    |

## 34.5 QUESTIONS WITH "DID"

Questions in the past simple without the verb "be" or an auxiliary verb start with "did" and have the main verb in its base form. The subject and main verb do not swap places.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Did they have** a good time?



**Did she meet** her friends in town?



**Did you read** a book on the beach?



**Did he go** to the gym?



**Did I tell** you the good news?



**Did Jack** just get fired?



**Did you swim** in the sea?



**Didn't we meet** at the conference last year in Paris?



### COMMON MISTAKES BASE FORMS IN QUESTIONS WITH "DO"

When questions are formed with the auxiliary verb "do," the main verb must be in the base form.

**Does she work** in a school? ✓

**Does she works** in a school? ✗

**Did they buy** a new car? ✓

**Did they bought** a new car? ✗

# 35 Question words

Open questions are questions that do not have simple “yes” or “no” answers. In English, they are formed by using question words.

See also:

Forming questions **34**

Prepositions of time **107**

## 35.1 QUESTION WORDS

There are nine common question words in English.

**What** is used to ask questions about things.

**What** is the time?



**When** is used to ask questions about time.

**When** is dinner?



**Why** is used to ask for reasons.

**Why** are you mad?



**Where** is used to ask about places or directions.

**Where** is the café?



**Who** is used to ask about people.

**Who** is Jo's teacher?



**Whom** is a formal version of “who,” that can only be used as an object of a question.

**Whom** did you give the package to?



**How** is used to ask about a condition, or the way something is done.

**How** are you?



**How** can also be used with an adjective or an adverb to ask about the degree to which the adjective applies.

**How** busy is she?



**Which** is used to ask someone to specify between two or more named things.

**Which** car is yours?



**Whose** is used to ask who is the owner of something.

**Whose** cat is this?





### 35.2 "WHAT / WHICH"

"What" is used when the question is general. "Which" is used when there are two or more possibilities in the question.

There are no choices in the question.

**What** is the tallest building in the world?



The question includes a choice of possible answers.

**Which** building is taller, Big Ben or the Eiffel Tower?



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**What** is the highest mountain in the Alps?



**Which** mountain is higher, the Matterhorn or Mont Blanc?



**What** sort of food do you like?



**Which** do you prefer, the red skirt or the blue skirt?



### 35.3 "HOW OFTEN" AND "WHEN"

"How often" is used to ask about the frequency with which someone does an activity.

"When" is used to ask about the specific time that they do something.

"How often" asks about frequency.

**How often** do you go on vacation?



I usually go on vacation once a year.

"When" asks about the specific time something happens.

**When** do you go running?



I go on Thursday nights.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**How often** do you go to the beach?



Not very often.

**When** do you go to the gym?



On Tuesdays and Fridays.

# 36 Open questions

Open questions can't be answered with "yes" or "no."  
They are formed differently depending on the  
main verb of the question.

See also:

Present simple 1 Question words 35

Verbs 49

## 36.1 OPEN QUESTIONS WITH "BE"

If the main verb of the sentence is "be," the question word goes at the beginning of the question and the form of "be" goes straight after it.

My name is Sarah.  
**What** is your name?

"Be" comes after  
the question word.

The question is "open"  
because it can't be  
answered "yes" or "no."



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**What** is Ruby's job?



**How** was the concert?



**Where** were you last night?



**Why** are we all here?



**What** is this thing?



**Why** aren't you at school?



### HOW TO FORM

QUESTION WORD

**What**

"BE"

**is**

**was**

REST OF SENTENCE

**your name?**

## 36.2 OPEN QUESTIONS WITH OTHER VERBS

For all questions except those formed with "be," the question word is followed by an auxiliary verb. If there is already an auxiliary verb in the sentence, it is also used in the question. If there is no auxiliary verb, a form of "do" is added.

**Who should I call?**

This auxiliary verb is already in the sentence, so it stays in the question.



**When do you eat lunch?**

Auxiliary "do" follows the question word.



The question word goes at the beginning.

The main verb changes to its base form.

### HOW TO FORM

| QUESTION WORD | AUXILIARY VERB | SUBJECT | MAIN VERB  |
|---------------|----------------|---------|------------|
| When          | do             | you     | eat lunch? |
|               | did            |         |            |
|               | should         |         |            |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Where do you go swimming?**



**Where could he have gone?**



**What does she do on the weekend?**



**How did this happen?**



**Which car do you drive to work?**



**Who can speak English here?**



**When does he finish work?**



**What should I do now?**



**Why did you stay up so late?**



**When did you get a cat?**





# 37 Object and subject questions

There are two kinds of question: object questions and subject questions. They are formed in different ways and are used to ask about different things.

See also:

Present simple 1 Types of verbs 49

Verbs with objects 53

## 37.1 OBJECT QUESTIONS

Use object questions to ask who received an action, not who did the action. They are called object questions because the question word is the object of the main verb.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

What did he eat?

He ate steak and salad.

Who did you speak to?

I spoke to Jane.

## HOW TO FORM

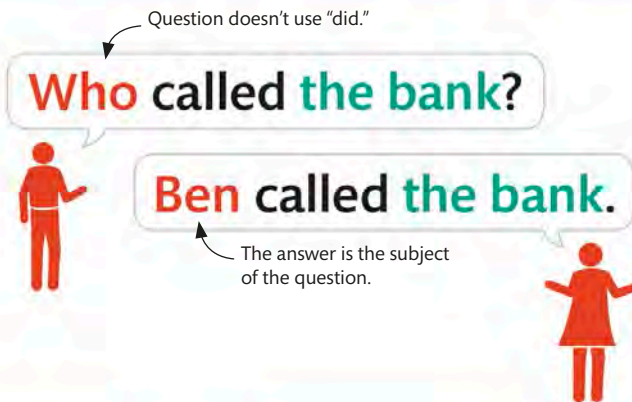


Different question words can be used here.

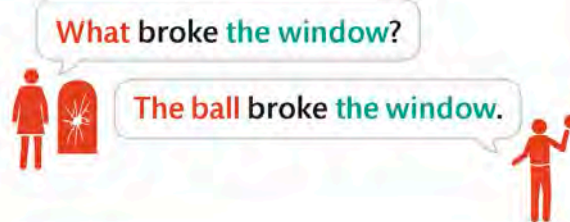
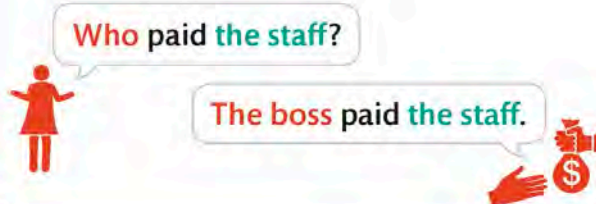
The auxiliary tells you whether the question is talking about the past or the present.

## 37.2 SUBJECT QUESTIONS

Subject questions are used to ask who did an action. They are called subject questions because the question word is the subject of the main verb. They do not use the auxiliary verb "do."

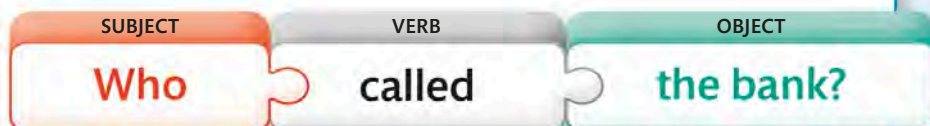


### FURTHER EXAMPLES



### HOW TO FORM

"Who" and "what" are the most common pronouns used in subject questions.

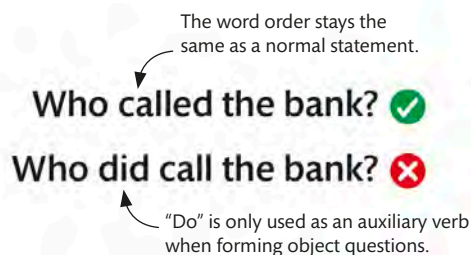


### ! COMMON MISTAKES OBJECT AND SUBJECT QUESTIONS

**Object questions** must use a form of the auxiliary "do."



**Subject questions** do not use an auxiliary verb and the word order stays the same as in a normal statement.



# 38 Indirect questions

Indirect questions are more polite than direct questions. They are very common in formal spoken English, particularly when asking for information.

See also:

Present simple **1** Forming questions **34**

Types of verbs **49**

## 38.1 INDIRECT OPEN QUESTIONS

Indirect questions often start with a polite opening phrase. After the question word, the word order in indirect questions is the same as in positive statements.



Indirect questions start with an opening phrase.



Where **is** the station?

Do you know  
Could you tell me } where **the station is**?

The verb comes after the subject.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Do you know how much **the tickets will cost**?



Could you tell me why **you were** late?

Could you tell me what time **the stores close**?

Indirect questions leave out the auxiliary verb "do."



## HOW TO FORM

OPENING PHRASE

Do you know

Could you tell me

QUESTION WORD

where

SUBJECT

the station

VERB

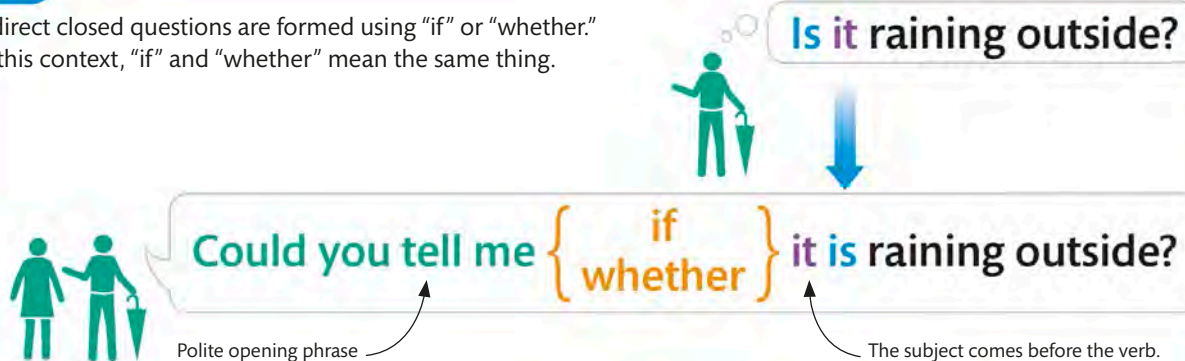
is?

A polite opening phrase comes first.



## 38.2 INDIRECT CLOSED QUESTIONS

Indirect closed questions are formed using "if" or "whether."  
In this context, "if" and "whether" mean the same thing.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

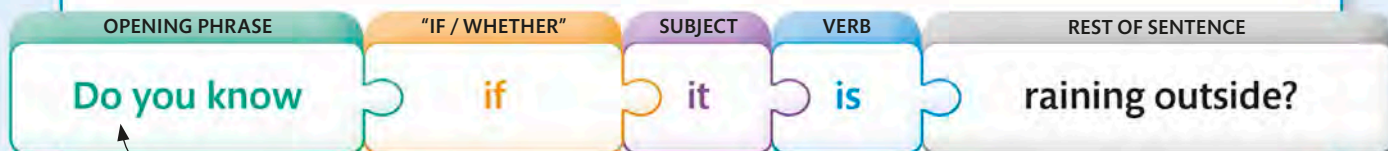


Do you know if that restaurant is expensive?



Could you tell me whether the train is on time?

### HOW TO FORM



A polite opening phrase comes first.



### COMMON MISTAKES WORD ORDER WITH INDIRECT QUESTIONS

When a question has an opening phrase, the word order in indirect questions is the same as in a statement. There is no inversion, and "do" is not added.

Could you tell me where the station is? ✓

Could you tell me where is the station? ✗

Could you tell me when you close? ✓

Could you tell me when do you close? ✗

# 39 Question tags

In spoken English, small questions are often added to the ends of sentences. These are called question tags, and they are most often used to invite someone to agree.

See also:

Present simple **1** Past simple **7**  
Types of verbs **49** Modal verbs **56**

## 39.1 QUESTION TAGS USING "BE"

The simplest question tags use the verb "be" with a pronoun matching the subject of the sentence.

STATEMENT QUESTION TAG  
The music is very loud, **isn't it?**



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



You're cold, **aren't you?**



I'm late, **aren't I?**

For statements with "I," "aren't I?" is used in the negative question tag, not "amn't I?"



He was tall, **wasn't he?**



I'm not talking too much, **am I?**

## HOW TO FORM

A positive statement is followed by a negative question tag, and a negative statement is followed by a positive question tag.

POSITIVE STATEMENT

The music is very loud,

Verb is positive.

NEGATIVE QUESTION TAG

**isn't it?**

Question tag uses negative form of verb.

NEGATIVE STATEMENT

The music **isn't** very loud,

Verb is negative.

POSITIVE QUESTION TAG

**is it?**

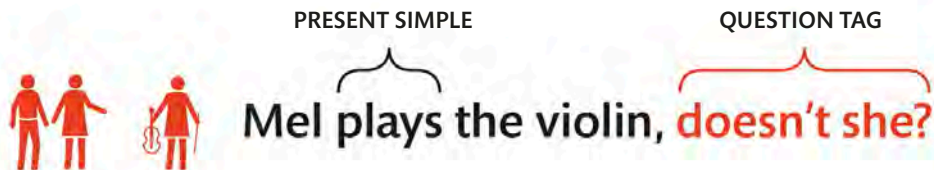
Question tag uses positive form of verb.

## TIP

Question tags are mostly used in informal situations.

## 39.2 QUESTION TAGS USING AUXILIARY VERBS

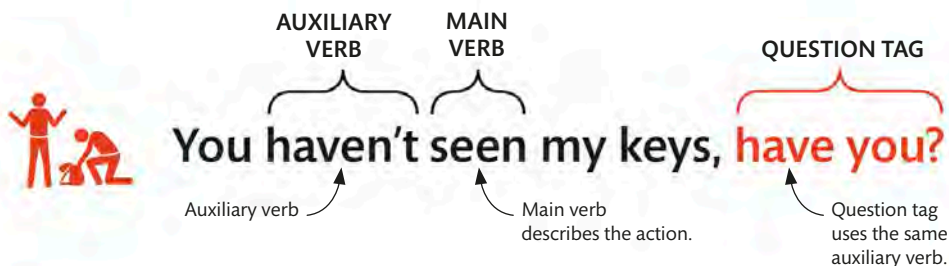
For most verbs other than "be," a present simple statement is followed by a question tag with "do" or "does."



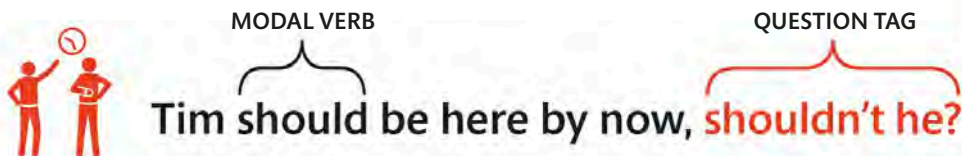
A past simple statement is followed by a question tag with "did."



A statement with an auxiliary verb is followed by a question tag with the same auxiliary verb.



Statements with modal verbs such as "could," "would," and "should" are followed by question tags that use the same modal verb.



## 39.3 INTONATION WITH QUESTION TAGS

If the intonation goes up at the end of the question tag, it is a question requiring an answer.

**You'd like to move offices, wouldn't you?**  
[I am asking whether or not you would like to move offices.]

If the intonation goes down at the end of a question tag, the speaker is just inviting the listener to agree.

**You've already met Evelyn, haven't you?**  
[I already know you've met Evelyn.]



# 40 Short questions

Short questions are a way of showing interest during conversation. They're used to keep conversation going, rather than to ask for new information.

See also:

Present simple 1 Forming questions 34

Types of verbs 49

## 40.1 SHORT QUESTIONS

Short questions must be in the same tense as the statement they're responding to. If the statement is positive, the short question should be positive and vice versa. The subject from the statement is replaced with the relevant pronoun.

It's Tom's birthday today.



Is it?

For statements using "be," the short question uses the same form of "be."

I play golf every weekend.



Do you?

For other verbs, a form of "do" is used.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I am going to visit my parents next week.



Are you?

"I am" becomes "are you" because it is directed back at the speaker.

I went to a party last night.



Did you?

The past simple of "do" is used to match "went," which is the past simple of "go."

Rob wasn't in the office this morning.



Wasn't he?

The negative is used to match the statement.

My son studies every night.



Does he?

The third person form "does" is used to match "studies."

## 40.2 SHORT QUESTIONS WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

If a statement contains an auxiliary verb, including modal verbs, that auxiliary verb is repeated in the short question.

**I have just come back from Hawaii.**



**Have you?**

Here, "have" is an auxiliary verb forming the present perfect.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I couldn't wait to come to work today.**



**Couldn't you?**

**I've been working since 7am.**



**Have you?**

**The train should be here by now.**



**Should it?**

**I can't find my car keys.**



**Can't you?**

## 40.3 SHORT QUESTIONS IN US ENGLISH

In US English, short questions are sometimes not inverted.

**Roger is starting a new job tomorrow.**



**He is?**

The subject and verb are not inverted, but this is said with a rising intonation.

**My team didn't win the game last night.**



**They didn't?**

# 41 Short answers

When answering closed questions in English, some words can often be left out to make responses shorter. These short answers are often used in spoken English.

See also:

Present simple 1 Types of verbs 49

Modal verbs 56 "There" 85

## 41.1 SHORT ANSWERS

When the question uses the verb "be," "be" is used in the same tense in the short answer. When the question uses the auxiliary verb "do," "do" is used in the same tense in the short answer.

Question uses "be."

**Are you a doctor?**

Yes, **I am.**

No, **I'm not.**

"A doctor" doesn't need to be repeated in the answer.

An illustration of a doctor in a white coat and a farmer in overalls holding a pitchfork.

Question uses "do."

**Do you like coffee?**

Yes, **I do.**

No, **I don't.**

"Like coffee" doesn't need to be repeated in the answer.

An illustration of a person sitting at a table with a coffee pot and a person sweeping the floor.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Is your name Sophie?**

Yes, **it is.**

**Are you having fun?**

Yes, **I am.**

**Was the train on time?**

No, **it wasn't.**

An illustration showing two people talking, a person with a balloon, and two people looking at a train.

**Does he live here?**

Yes, **he does.**

**Do you like cake?**

Yes, **I do.**

**Did you enjoy the play?**

No, **I didn't.**

An illustration showing two people standing, a person holding a cake, and a person looking disappointed.



## 41.2 SHORT ANSWERS WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

When the question uses an auxiliary verb, including modal verbs, the same auxiliary verb is used in the short answer.

Can you ride a bicycle?



Yes, I can.



No, I can't.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Would you like to play chess?

Yes, I would.



Should I sell my house?

Yes, you should.



Have they bought a new car?

No, they haven't.



Will he be at the party later?

No, he won't.



### COMMON MISTAKES SHORT ANSWERS WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

If a question uses an auxiliary verb, including modal verbs, it must be used in the short answer. The main verb should not be used at all.

Can you ride a bicycle?



Yes, I can.



Yes, I ride.



## 41.3 SHORT ANSWERS WITH "THERE"

When the question uses "there," it is also used in the answer.

Is there a hotel in the town?



Yes, there is.



No, there isn't.



Short for: "No, there isn't a hotel in the town."

Are there hotels in the town?



Yes, there are.



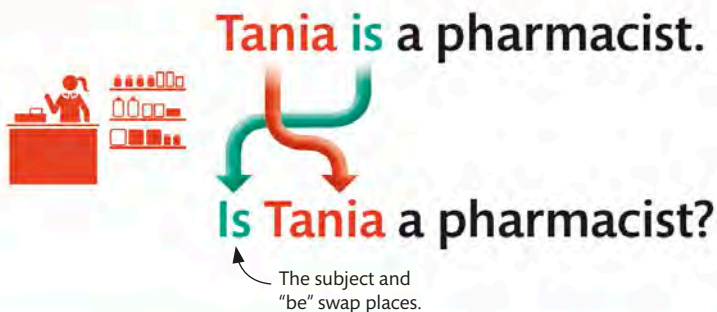
No, there aren't.



# 42 Questions overview

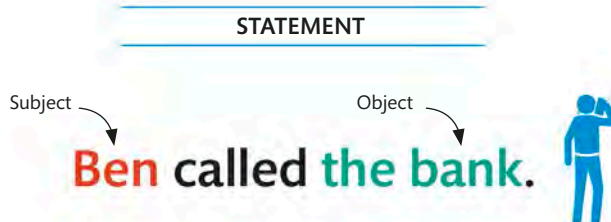
## 42.1 FORMING QUESTIONS

Questions in English are formed either by swapping the positions of the subject and the verb, or by using the auxiliary verb "do."

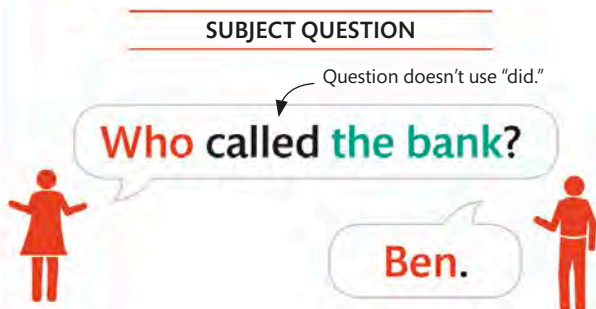


## 42.2 SUBJECT AND OBJECT QUESTIONS

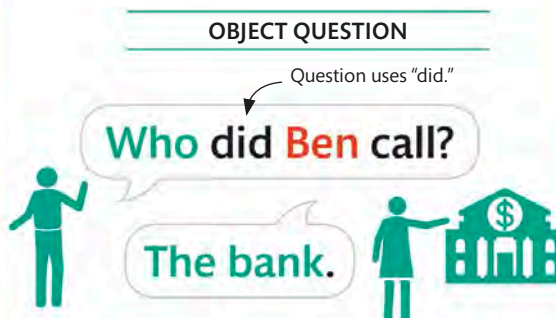
Questions in English are formed differently depending on whether they are asking who or what did an action or who or what received an action.



**Subject questions** ask who did an action. The question word is the subject of the main verb. They do not use the auxiliary verb "do."



**Object questions** ask who received an action. The question word is the object of the question. They usually use the auxiliary verb "do."

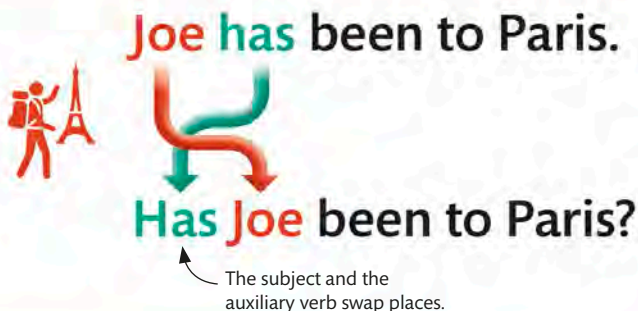


Questions in English are formed in different ways depending on the main verb. Open and closed questions are formed differently, and spoken with different intonation.

See also:

Forming questions **34** Question words **35**

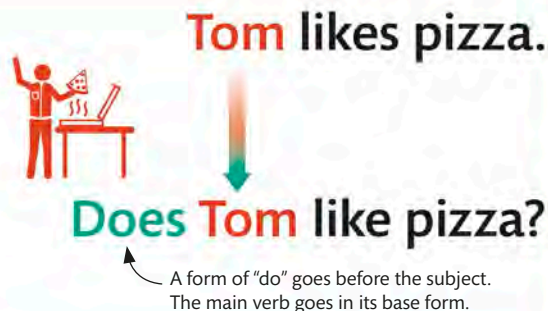
Question tags **39** Short questions **40**



**Joe has** been to Paris.

**Has Joe** been to Paris?

The subject and the auxiliary verb swap places.



**Tom likes** pizza.

**Does Tom** like pizza?

A form of "do" goes before the subject. The main verb goes in its base form.

## 42.3 QUESTION TAGS AND SHORT QUESTIONS

**Question tags** are added to the end of a question, usually to ask someone to agree with you. A positive statement is followed by a negative question tag, and vice versa.

You like skiing, **don't you?**



**Short questions** are used to show that someone is listening to the speaker. They are positive for positive statements and negative for negative statements.

Yes, I go skiing twice a year.



**Do you?**

## 42.4 CLOSED AND OPEN QUESTIONS

**Closed questions** can only be answered with "yes" or "no." When they are spoken, the voice often rises at the end of the question.

Does Stevie work in an office?

**Open questions** are formed by adding question words to the start of the question. They can be answered in many different ways. The tone of the speaker's voice usually falls at the end of open questions.

Where does Stevie work?





# 43 Reported speech

The words that people say are called direct speech. Reported speech is often used to describe what someone said at an earlier point in time.

See also:

Present simple **1** Past simple **7**

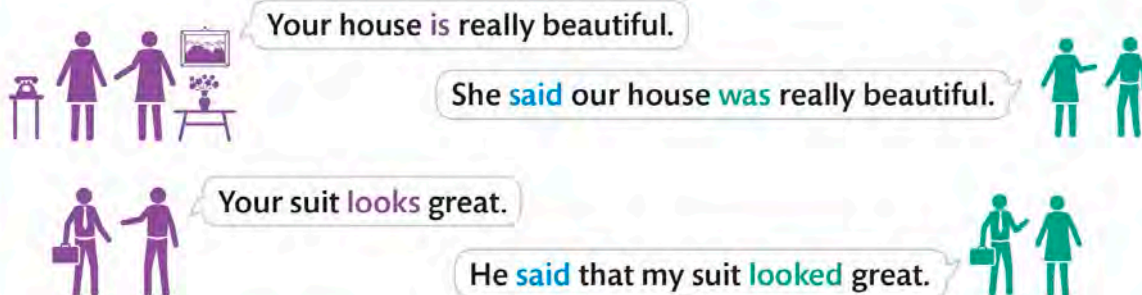
Types of verbs **49**

## 43.1 REPORTED SPEECH

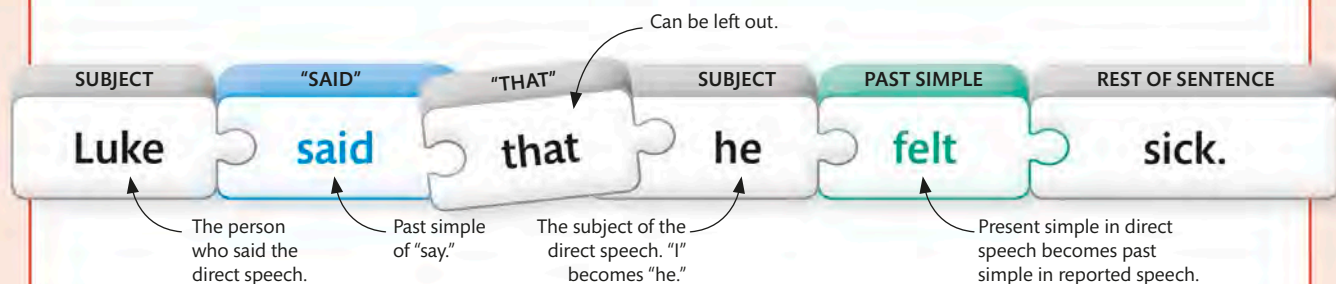
The main verb in reported speech is usually "said."  
The reported verb is usually in a different tense from the direct speech.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



## HOW TO FORM



## 43.2 "TELL" IN REPORTED SPEECH

In reported speech, "tell" can also be used as the main verb. It must be followed by an object, which shows who someone is talking to.

I **want** to learn to drive.



He { **said**  
**told me** } that he **wanted** to learn to drive.

"Say" does not need to be followed by an object.

"Tell" must be followed by an object.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



She **told me** that she **was** at the party.



She **told me** that she **had** a very stressful job.



He **told us** he **arrived** late to the meeting.



They **told us** they **bought** a new house.



I **told her** that I **went** abroad last year.

"That" can also be left out in reported speech with "told."



We **told them** that we **didn't** want it.

### ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES "SAY" AND "TELL" IN REPORTED SPEECH

He **said** that he had a fast car. ✓

He **said me** that he had a fast car. ✗

"Said" cannot have an object.

He **told me** that he had a fast car. ✓

He **told** that he had a fast car. ✗

"Told" must have an object.

# 44 Tenses in reported speech

In reported speech, the reported verb usually “goes back” a tense. Time and place references and pronouns sometimes also change.

See also:

Present continuous 4 Past continuous 10

Past perfect simple 13 Modal verbs 56

## 44.1 REPORTED SPEECH IN DIFFERENT TENSES

The tense used in reported speech is usually one tense back in time from the tense in direct speech.

**I'm working** in New York.



She said **she was working** in New York.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS



PAST CONTINUOUS

**I've been** to China twice.



He said that **he'd been** to China twice.

PRESENT PERFECT



PAST PERFECT

**I will call** you soon.



He said **he would call** them soon.

FUTURE WITH "WILL"



MODAL VERB "WOULD"

**We can speak** Japanese.



They said that **they could speak** Japanese.

MODAL VERB "CAN"



MODAL VERB "COULD"



## 44.2 REPORTED SPEECH AND THE PAST SIMPLE

The past simple in direct speech can either stay as the past simple or change to the past perfect in reported speech. The meaning is the same.

I **arrived** in Delhi on Saturday.

DIRECT SPEECH  
WITH PAST SIMPLE

He said { he **arrived**  
he'd **arrived** } in Delhi on Saturday.

REPORTED SPEECH WITH  
PAST SIMPLE OR PAST PERFECT

## 44.3 REPORTED SPEECH WITHOUT CHANGE OF TENSE

If the situation described is ongoing, the verb does not have to change tense in reported speech.



I **like** eating cake.

Amelia said that she **likes** eating cake.

Amelia still likes eating cake.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Your hat **looks** great.

He said that my hat **looks** great.



I **love** your tie.

He said that he **loves** my tie.



#### 44.4 TIME AND PLACE REFERENCES

If speech is reported some time after it was said, words used to talk about times and places may need to change.

The time reference is "yesterday" in direct speech.

I went to work **yesterday**.



APRIL  
25



APRIL  
26

She said she'd been to work **the day before**.

The time reference is "the day before" in reported speech.



APRIL  
27

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I'll call you **tomorrow**.



He said he'd call me **the following day**.



The weather is nice **here**.



She told me the weather was nice **there**.



We'll have a party **this weekend**.



They said they'd have a party **that weekend**.



I saw you **last week**.



She said she'd seen me **the week before**.



I'm starting a new job **today**.



You told her you were starting a new job **that day**.

## 44.5 OTHER CHANGES IN REPORTED SPEECH

In reported speech, pronouns may also need to be changed to ensure they refer to the correct person or thing.



I don't believe **these** ghost stories.

He said that he didn't believe **those** ghost stories.

"These" is replaced by the more distant "those."



**This** house gives me the creeps.

He said that **that** house gave him the creeps.

"This" is replaced by the more distant "that."



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I don't like **my** new haircut.

He said that he didn't like **his** new haircut.



I can't wait to move into **our** new house.

He said that he couldn't wait to move into **their** new house.



Are you going to come with **us**?

He asked if I was going to go with **them**.



**These** are the best pastries I've ever tasted.

She said **they** were the best pastries she'd ever tasted.





# 45 Reporting verbs

In reported speech, "said" can be replaced with a wide variety of verbs that give people more information about how someone said something.

See also:

Present simple 1 Past simple 7

Types of verbs 49

## 45.1 REPORTING VERBS WITH "THAT"

"Say" and "tell" do not give any information about the speaker's manner. They can be replaced with other verbs that suggest the speaker's mood or reason for speaking.



I'm not very good at golf.

Neil **admitted that** he wasn't very good at golf.

Shows unwillingness on the part of the speaker.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Don't be afraid of the dog. He's just excited to see you.

They **explained that** the dog was barking because he was excited to see me.



Your house is beautiful. It has a nice lawn, too.

Rohit admired our house, and **added that** it had a nice lawn.



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

REPORTING VERB (PAST TENSE)

"THAT"

PAST TENSE

Neil

**admitted**

**that**

he wasn't very good at golf.

Verb introduces reported speech and gives more information about it.

Verb is followed by "that."

Reported speech changes tense as usual.

## 45.2 REPORTING VERBS WITH OBJECT AND INFINITIVE

Some reporting verbs are followed by an object and an infinitive. English often uses these verbs to report orders, advice, and instructions.



Remember to buy some milk tonight.

Ellie **reminded** **me** **to buy** some milk tonight.

Reporting verb

Object

Infinitive



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

You've been very naughty! Go to your room.



I just **ordered** **Aaron** **to go** to his room.



Could you please give me a ride to the station?



Sorry I'm late. Lucia **asked** **me** **to give** her a ride to the station.



Come to the party! You'll have a great time!



We **encouraged** **Gareth** **to come** to the party. I hope he turns up.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

REPORTING VERB (PAST TENSE)

OBJECT

INFINITIVE

REST OF SENTENCE

Ellie

reminded

me

to buy

some milk.

The object shows who was being spoken to.

The infinitive usually expresses an order, instruction, or piece of advice.

# 46 Reported speech with negatives

Negatives in reported speech are formed in the same way as negatives in direct speech. "Not" is used with the auxiliary, or with the main verb if there is no auxiliary.

See also:

Present simple negative 2

Past simple negative 8 Types of verbs 49

## 46.1 REPORTING NEGATIVE AUXILIARIES

When the direct speech is negative using "do not," "is not," and "has not," "do," "is," or "has" changes tense, rather than the main verb.



I **don't** work on weekends.

Present simple negative.

He said he **didn't** work on weekends.

Past simple negative.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



I **don't** want to drive. I'd rather walk.

Sue said she **didn't** want to drive. She'd rather walk.



The car **isn't** starting.

They told me the car **wasn't** starting.



They **haven't** arrived on time because of the car.

Fay said they **hadn't** arrived on time because of the car.





## 46.2 REPORTING OTHER VERBS WITH NEGATIVES

If a reporting verb is followed by an object and an infinitive, "not" goes between the object and the infinitive to form the negative.



You shouldn't sign the contract.

Our lawyer **advised** me **not** to sign the contract.



"Not" makes the reported speech negative.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Don't eat any more cake. It's bad for you.

I think I **persuaded** Evan **not** to eat any more cake.



Don't go in the water. It's dangerous.

The lifeguard **warned** me **not** to go in the water.



I don't think you should stand so near the edge.

My friend **warned** me **not** to stand near the edge.



You must not lose your passport while you're away.

My dad **reminded** me **not** to lose my passport.



Don't draw on the walls!

My dad **told** me **not** to draw on the walls.



# 47 Reported questions

Reported questions are used to describe questions that someone has asked. Direct questions and reported questions use different word orders.

See also:

Forming questions 34

Open questions 36 Types of verbs 49

## 47.1 REPORTED OPEN QUESTIONS

Direct open questions are reported by swapping the order of the subject and the verb.



Where are my keys?



Adam asked me where his keys were. Have you seen them?

The subject comes before the verb in reported questions.

The tense in reported questions usually moves one tense back from the tense in direct questions.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Why can't you come to the party?

He asked me why I couldn't come to the party.

An object can be included to say who was asked the original question.



When will they arrive?

She asked when they would arrive.

The object of the reporting verb can be left out.



## HOW TO FORM



The main verb in reported questions is usually "ask."

The object can be left out.

The subject comes before the verb in reported questions.

The tense moves one tense back from direct speech.

## 47.2 REPORTING QUESTIONS WITH "DO"

When a direct question uses the verb "do," this is left out of reported questions.



Let's bake a cake. What **do** we **need**?

He asked me what we **needed**.

Reported questions leave out the auxiliary verb "do."

The past form of the verb is usually used.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Why **do** you **want** to work for us?



They asked me why I **wanted** to work for them.



What **do** you **think**?



He asked me what I **thought**.

What **does** a florist **do**?



James asked me what a florist **does**.

The tense doesn't always change.

Where **do** Jay and Seb **live**?



Paul asked me where Jay and Seb **live**.

Who **do** you **know** at work?



She asked me who I **knew** at work.

What **do** you usually **knit**?



He asked me what I usually **knit**.

### ! COMMON MISTAKES WORD ORDER IN REPORTED QUESTIONS

It is incorrect to swap the verb and object in reported questions.

He asked me where **the station is**. ✓

He asked me where **is the station**. ✗



## 47.3 REPORTED CLOSED QUESTIONS

If the answer to a question in direct speech is "yes" or "no," "if" or "whether" is used to report the question. "Whether" is more formal than "if."



Direct question.

Are you meeting your sales targets?

My boss asked me if I was meeting my sales targets.



Reported question uses "if" or "whether."

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Will you be at the meeting on Monday?

Kara asked whether I would be at the meeting on Monday.



In reported questions with "if" and "whether," the object after "asked" can be left out.



Do you want to stay for dinner?

Ian asked me if we wanted to stay for dinner.



Reported questions with "if" and "whether" leave out the auxiliary verb "do."

### HOW TO FORM



The object can be left out.

"If" and "whether" mean the same thing, but "whether" is more formal.

#### 47.4 REPORTING QUESTIONS WITH "OR"

"If" or "whether" can also be used to report questions that use "or" in direct speech.



Does **Jo** want tea **or** coffee?



Jo, Tom asked me **if you** wanted tea **or** coffee.

The verb changes tense.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Do **you** want to go by car **or** by train?



He asked **whether we** wanted to go by car **or** by train.



Do **you** prefer wine **or** champagne?



Jo asked **me if I** preferred wine **or** champagne.



Did **you** choose to ski **or** snowboard?



He asked **whether I** chose to ski **or** snowboard.



Did **you** decide to walk **or** run?



Harry asked **if I** decided to walk **or** run.

# 48 Reported speech overview

## 48.1 CHANGING REFERENCES IN REPORTED SPEECH

Certain words have variable reference, which means their meaning is context-dependent. In order to retain the meaning of the direct speech, reported speech usually revises tenses, pronouns, and time references.



I **want** to become a police officer.

TENSE

The tense usually moves back.

She said she **wanted** to become a police officer.



## 48.2 REPORTING VERBS IN THE PRESENT TENSE

The reporting verb can be in the present tense.  
In this case, the tense of the sentence doesn't change.

I don't like ice cream.



She **says** she doesn't like ice cream.

Reporting verb is in the present tense.

The main verb doesn't change tense.



I've never tried ice cream.



She **tells** me she's never tried ice cream.

Using "tell" in the present tense can be more emphatic than "say."





When forming reported speech from direct speech, some words change in order to keep the meaning consistent. Other words stay the same.

**See also:**

Present simple **1** Past simple **7** Tenses in reported speech **44** Modal verbs **56** Personal pronouns **77**

**PRONOUNS**



I did well in **my** exams.

She said she did well in **her** exams.

"My" changes to "her" to refer back to the first speaker.



**TIME REFERENCES**



I'll apply for the job **tomorrow**.

She said she'd apply for the job **the next day**.

"Tomorrow" changes to "the next day" to keep the meaning the same.



### 48.3 REPORTING MODAL VERBS

Most modal verbs, except for "will" and "can," behave differently from other verbs. No matter what the tense of the direct speech, they don't change in reported speech.

I **might** buy some ice cream.



She said she **might** buy some ice cream.

The modal verb is the same as in direct speech.



I **could** have bought one.



She said she **could** have bought one.

The reported verb also doesn't change from direct speech.



# 49 Types of verbs

Verbs can be described as main verbs or auxiliary verbs. Main verbs describe actions, occurrences, or states of being. Auxiliary verbs modify the meaning of main verbs.

See also:

Present perfect simple 11

Modal verbs 56

## 49.1 MAIN VERBS

Main verbs are the most important verbs in a sentence. They can describe actions or states, or they can be used to link a subject to a description.

"Play" is the main verb that describes an action.

**I play tennis every Wednesday evening.**



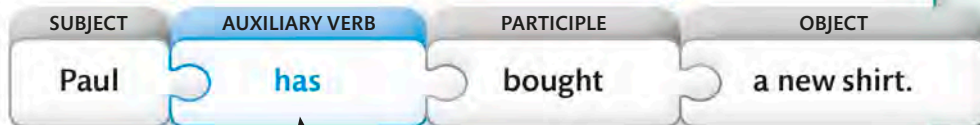
## 49.2 AUXILIARY VERBS

Auxiliary verbs are used with main verbs to modify their meaning. Auxiliary verbs are used very frequently to form different tenses.

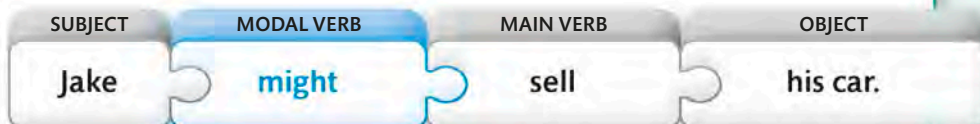
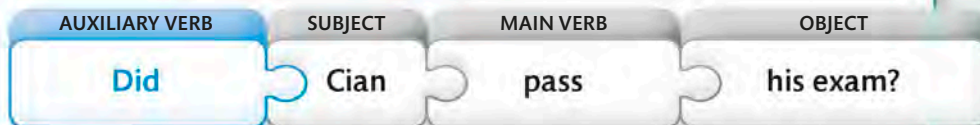
The auxiliary verb "do" is used to make questions and negatives of statements that don't already have an auxiliary verb.

Modal verbs are also auxiliary verbs. They modify the meaning of the main verb, expressing various notions such as possibility or obligation.

### PRESENT PERFECT



"Has" is an auxiliary verb here. It's being used to form the present perfect.



### 49.3 LINKING VERBS

Linking verbs express a state of being or becoming. They link a subject to a complement, which renames or describes the subject.

The children **are** happy.

Subject → Complement



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Harry **looks** just like his father.



This **seems** like a lovely place to live.



Whatever you're cooking **smells** delicious!



After leaving school, she **became** a teacher.

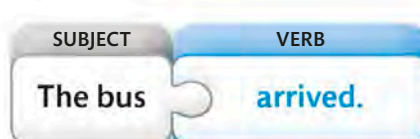


### 49.4 TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Some verbs take an object, which is a noun or phrase that receives the action of the verb. Verbs which take an object are known as **transitive verbs**.



Some verbs never take an object. These verbs are known as **intransitive verbs**.



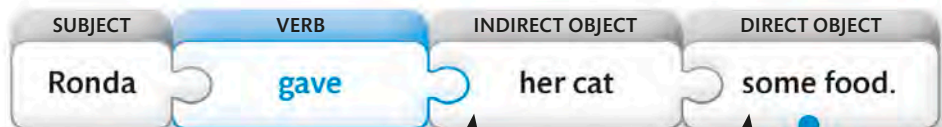
Some verbs can be either **transitive** or **intransitive**.



"Read" can be used with or without an object.



Some verbs can take **two objects**, a direct object and an indirect object.



The indirect object benefits from the action.

The direct object is what the verb "gave" refers to.





# 50 Action and state verbs

Verbs that describe actions or events are known as “action” or “dynamic” verbs, whereas those that describe states are known as “state” or “stative” verbs.

See also:

Present simple **1** Present continuous **4**

Past simple **7** Past continuous **10**

## 50.1 ACTION AND STATE VERBS

Action verbs usually describe what people or things do.  
State verbs usually say how things are or how someone feels.

### ACTION VERB

I { **read**  
**am reading** } a book.

Action verbs can be used in simple forms and continuous forms.



### STATE VERB

I **love** books.

State verbs are not usually used in the continuous form.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Dominic **is eating** ice cream.



Gayle **is lying** on the couch.



I **don't eat** meat. I'm a vegetarian.



I **want** to go away somewhere.



She **has** two cats and a dog.



We've **known** each other for years.



## COMMON MISTAKES USING STATE VERBS IN CONTINUOUS TENSES

Most state verbs cannot be used in continuous forms.



State verbs are only usually used in the simple form.

I **want** a new laptop. ✓

I **am wanting** a new laptop. ✗

State verbs can't usually be used in continuous forms.

## 50.2 USING STATE VERBS IN CONTINUOUS FORMS

Some verbs can be both action and state verbs. When these verbs are describing an action, they can be used in continuous forms.

### ACTION



**I am thinking** about taking up fencing.

[Right now, I'm considering taking up fencing.]



The chef **was tasting** his soup.

[The chef is testing the soup's flavor.]



**I'm seeing** some friends for lunch tomorrow.

[I'm meeting some friends tomorrow.]

### STATE



**I think** fencing is a great sport.

[In my opinion, fencing is a great sport.]



This soup **tasted** disgusting!

[The soup has a disgusting flavor.]



**I saw** some birds at the park yesterday.

[There were some birds at the park.]

A few state verbs can be used in continuous forms, keeping their stative meaning.

The use of a continuous form emphasizes a change, development, or temporary situation.

### CONTINUOUS FORM



**Are you feeling** better today?  
You **seemed** sick yesterday.



**We're sounding** much better than usual!



**My leg is** really **hurting** this morning.

### SIMPLE FORM



How do you **feel** about modern art?



**I wish** they'd stop. they **sound** terrible!



**My leg hurts.** Maybe I should go to the doctor.

# 51 Infinitives and participles

Infinitives and participles are forms of verbs that are rarely used on their own, but are important when making other forms or constructions.

See also:

Present continuous 4

Present perfect simple 11

## 51.1 INFINITIVES

The infinitive is the simplest form of the verb. English verbs have two types of infinitive.

Sometimes the infinitive is formed with "to" plus the verb. This is sometimes known as a "full" or "to" infinitive.



When the infinitive is formed without "to," it is known as the base or simple form, or the bare infinitive.

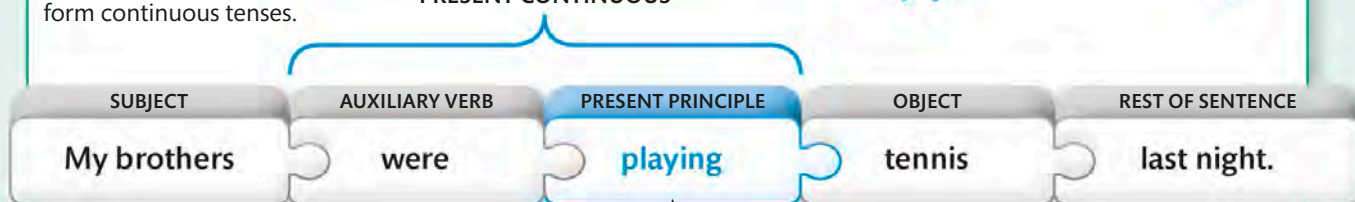


## 51.2 PRESENT PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS

Present participles and gerunds are formed by adding "-ing" to the base form of the verb. They are spelled the same, but they perform different functions in a sentence.

**Present participles** are most commonly used with auxiliary verbs to form continuous tenses.

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS



The present participle is being used to make the past continuous.

**Gerunds** are verbs that are used as nouns. They are sometimes known as verbal nouns.

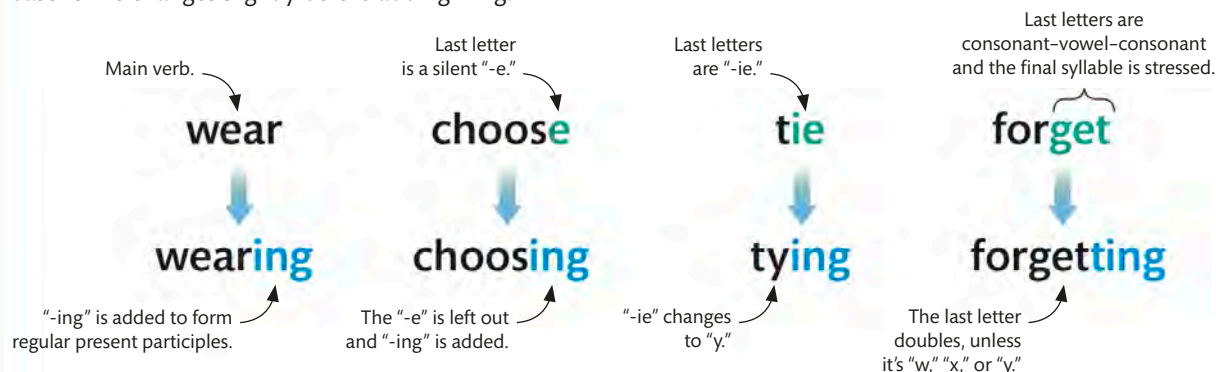


"Playing" is a gerund here. Along with "tennis," it forms the subject of the sentence.



## 51.3 PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND SPELLING RULES

All present participles and gerunds are formed by adding “-ing” to the base form of the verb. The spelling of some base forms changes slightly before adding “-ing.”



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Further examples of present participles and gerunds with their corresponding spelling rules:

- They’re **whispering** to each other.** The last letter is not doubled because “per” is not stressed.
- I’m **enjoying** my vacation.** The last letter of the verb doesn’t double if it’s “y.”
- She’s **swimming** in the ocean.** The last letter is doubled because the pattern is consonant-vowel-consonant.
- He’s **making** a cake.** The “-e” is dropped from the verb.
- Connor went **walking** in the hills.**
- Paul was told off for **lying**.**
- Sarah loves **riding** her horse.**
- The audience started **clapping**.**
- Stop **wasting** so much paper!**
- She started **looking** for a new job.**
- The children were **sitting** on the floor.**
- I’m **choosing** the new intern.**

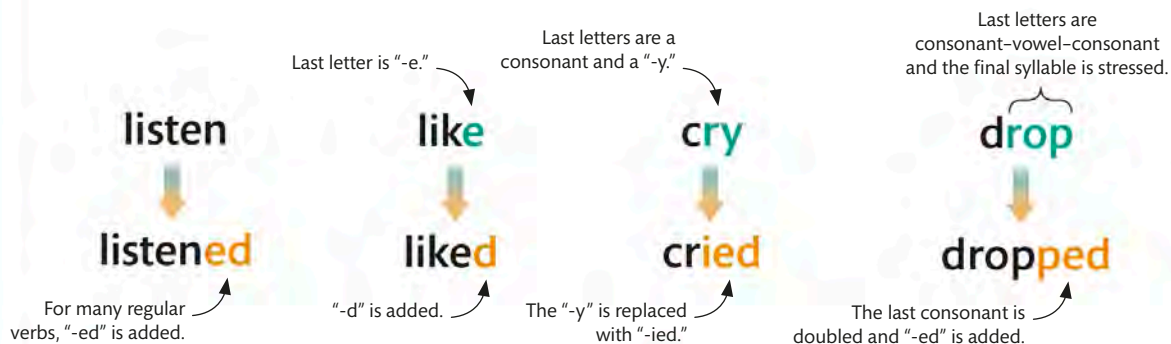
## 51.4 PAST PARTICIPLES

Past participles are used with auxiliary verbs to form perfect simple tenses, such as the present perfect simple.



## 51.5 SPELLING RULES FOR PAST PARTICIPLES

Regular past participles are made with the base form of the verb plus “-ed.” The spelling of some of these base forms changes a bit before adding “-ed.”



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



I should have **covered** my work. Susanna has **copied** all my answers.



You haven't **passed** the exam this time, but at least you have **improved**.



I had **planned** to take the kids to the beach, but the weather's terrible.



By this time next week, I will have **finished** all of my assignments.



My boss has **asked** me to come in early again tomorrow. I'm so tired!

## 51.6 IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES

Many verbs in English have irregular past participle forms. They often look quite different from their base form.

I **buy** new clothes every month.

I have just **bought** a new coat.

PAST PARTICIPLE



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

| BASE FORM  | PAST PARTICIPLE | SAMPLE SENTENCE  |
|------------|-----------------|--|
| be         | been            | You're late. Where have you <b>been</b> ?                      |
| become     | become          | This has <b>become</b> a real problem.                         |
| begin      | begun           | The class has already <b>begun</b> , so be quiet.              |
| choose     | chosen          | Which subjects have you <b>chosen</b> to study?                |
| do         | done            | My son has <b>done</b> a lot for the local community.          |
| feel       | felt            | I haven't <b>felt</b> very well for over a week now.           |
| know       | known           | Sonia would have <b>known</b> how to solve this problem.       |
| find       | found           | The police have <b>found</b> the suspect.                      |
| forget     | forgotten       | My husband has <b>forgotten</b> our anniversary again.         |
| go         | gone            | Helen has <b>gone</b> to Peru. She'll be back next week.       |
| have       | had             | You look so different! Have you <b>had</b> a haircut?          |
| make       | made            | I have <b>made</b> a cake for your birthday.                   |
| say        | said            | Jerry has <b>said</b> he'll be making a presentation.          |
| see        | seen            | After this evening, I'll have <b>seen</b> this show six times. |
| sing       | sung            | This will be the first time she's <b>sung</b> in public.       |
| tell       | told            | Has anyone <b>told</b> you the news? Kate's pregnant!          |
| understand | understood      | Has everyone <b>understood</b> the instructions?               |
| write      | written         | I sent the email as soon as I had <b>written</b> it.           |



# 52 Verb patterns

Some verbs in English can only go with a gerund or an infinitive. Some verbs can go with either. These verbs often describe wishes, plans, or feelings.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Infinitives and participles 51

## 52.1 VERBS WITH INFINITIVES

English uses the infinitive with "to" after certain verbs that describe someone's plans or wishes to do an activity.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The infinitive doesn't change no matter what the tense of the main verb is.



I'm **waiting to play** badminton, but my friend is running late.

We **wanted to play** baseball yesterday, but it was raining.



My car broke down, but my friend **offered to drive** me home.

Ron **decided to learn** how to play the trombone.

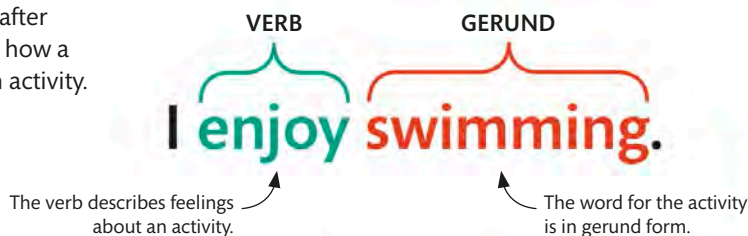


### OTHER VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES



## 52.2 VERBS WITH GERUNDS

English uses gerunds after certain verbs that say how a person feels about an activity.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



He doesn't **feel like** **playing** tennis tonight.



We really **dislike** **jogging**.  
We're so out of shape!



Do you **miss** **skiing** now that summer is here?



I really **enjoy** **running** marathons.



Would you **consider** **applying** for a promotion?



He doesn't **mind** **staying** late at work when he has to.

### OTHER VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS



## 52.3 VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE OR GERUND (NO CHANGE IN MEANING)

Some verbs can be followed by a gerund (an “-ing” form) or a “to” infinitive, with little or no change in meaning. You can often use both forms interchangeably.



I **like** { **to work**  
**working** } in an open-plan office with a team.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Emails are really awkward. I **prefer** { **to meet**  
**meeting** } in person.



After a short stop, they **continued** { **to drive**  
**driving** } toward the campsite.



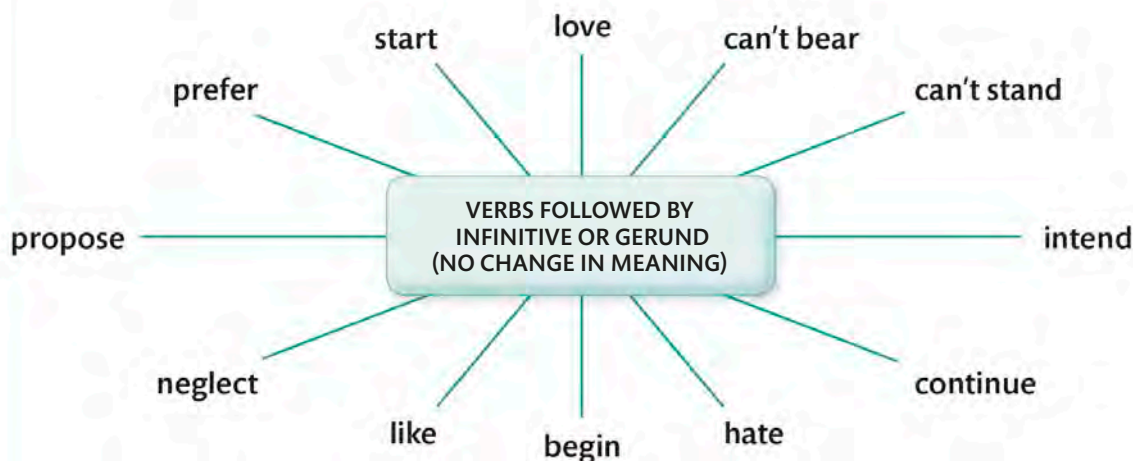
Once she had found a seat, she **began** { **to write**  
**writing** } her essay.



Why isn't the bus here yet? I really **can't stand** { **to be**  
**being** } late.



### OTHER VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE OR GERUND (NO CHANGE IN MEANING)





## 52.4 VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE OR GERUND (CHANGE IN MEANING)

Some verbs change their meaning depending on the form of the verb that follows them. The infinitive is used to describe the purpose of the main verb's action. The gerund is often used to talk about the action which is happening around the same time as the main verb's action.



He **stopped to talk** to her in the office before lunch.

[He was walking around the office, and he stopped walking so that he could talk to her.]



She **stopped talking** to him and rushed to a meeting.

[She was talking to him, and she stopped talking in order to do something else.]

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

#### VERB + INFINITIVE

She **forgot to send** the email, so her team never received the update.

[She did not send the email.]

He **went on to write** the report once the meeting had finished.

[He finished a meeting and then wrote the report.]

I **regret to tell** you the unhappy news. Your flight has been delayed.

[I have to tell you unhappy news, and I am sorry about this.]

Did you **remember to meet** David? Your meeting was scheduled for today.

[You were supposed to meet David. Did you remember to do that?]

#### VERB + GERUND

She **forgot sending** the email, so she sent it a second time.

[She forgot that she had already sent the email.]

He **went on writing** the report all evening. It took hours.

[He was writing the report, and continued to do so.]

I **regret telling** you the unhappy news. I can see it has upset you.

[I wish I hadn't told you the unhappy news because you are very upset now.]

Did you **remember meeting** David? I'd forgotten that we had already met him.

[You had met David before. Did you remember that?]

# 53 Verb patterns with objects

Some verbs, known as transitive verbs, have objects. When these verbs are followed by infinitives or gerunds, the object must come between the verb and the infinitive or gerund.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Infinitives and participles 51

## 53.1 VERB WITH OBJECT AND INFINITIVE

Some verbs that are followed by an infinitive must also have an object before that infinitive.

VERB + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

My computer **allows me to work** on two screens at once.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

VERB

OBJECT

INFINITIVE

REST OF SENTENCE

My computer

allows

me

to work

on two screens.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Emma's brother **wants her to turn** down the television.



Giorgio **bought a new suit to wear** to his brother's wedding.



The building manager **will tell you to leave** the building if there's a fire.



Helena's mother **is always reminding her to do** the dishes.



Jonathan's teacher **expects him to do** better next time.



I've **asked my boyfriend to buy** some bread and milk on his way home.



## ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES VERB PATTERNS WITH "WANT"

When the verb "want" is followed by an object and an infinitive, it is not formed with a "that" clause.



I want him to come to the exhibit with me. ✓

I want that he comes to the exhibit with me. ✗

"Want" can't be followed by a "that" clause.

"Want" should be followed by an object and infinitive.

## 53.2 VERB + OBJECT + GERUND PATTERNS

Some verbs that are followed by a gerund must also have an object before that gerund.

VERB + OBJECT + GERUND

Hayley heard the boss interviewing the new secretary.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

VERB

OBJECT

GERUND

REST OF SENTENCE

Hayley

heard

the boss

interviewing

the new secretary.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I remember Arnold leaving the house at around 10 o'clock.



Jeremy spends every winter snowboarding in the Alps.



I really don't like anyone talking to me while I'm trying to study.



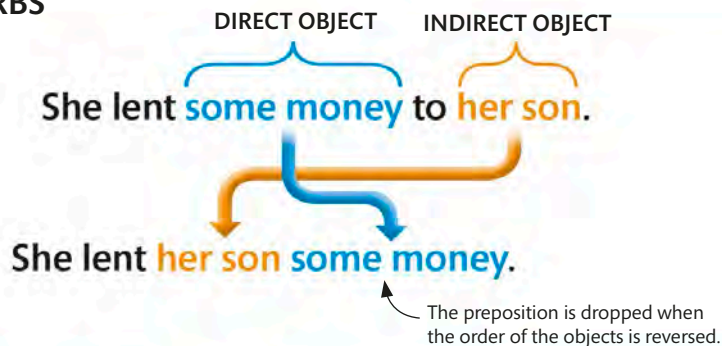
My sister loves science. I can see her becoming a doctor one day.





### 53.3 DOUBLE OBJECT VERBS

The direct object is the person or thing that an action happens to. The indirect object receives the same action. If the indirect object is the focus of the sentence, it comes after the direct object plus "to" or "for."



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Carolina sold { **her house** to **her younger brother**.  
**her younger brother** **her house**.



Federico bought { **a car** for **his parents**.  
**his parents** **a car**.

### 53.4 USING DOUBLE OBJECT VERBS WITH PRONOUNS

If the direct object is a pronoun, it must come before the indirect object.

She lent **it** to **her son**. ✓

She lent **her son** **it**. ✗

If the indirect object is a pronoun, it can come before or after the direct object.

She lent **some money** to **him**. ✓

She lent **him** **some money**. ✓

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Carolina sold { **it** to **her younger brother**.  
**it** to **him**.  
**him** **her house**.



Federico bought { **it** for **his parents**.  
**it** for **them**.  
**them** **a car**.

# 54 Verb patterns with prepositions

Some verb patterns include prepositions. Prepositions cannot be followed by infinitives, so these verb patterns only use gerunds.

See also:

Infinitives and participles 51

Verb patterns 52 Prepositions 105

## 54.1 VERB WITH PREPOSITION AND GERUND

If a preposition is followed by a verb, the verb must be a gerund (the “-ing” form).



Jasmine **decided against taking** the job.

Gerund

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Zac and Penny **are thinking about taking** a trip around the world.



My grandmother **is always worrying about forgetting** her house keys.



## 54.2 VERB WITH OBJECT, PREPOSITION, AND GERUND

If a verb takes an object, that object must come between the verb and the preposition.



He **congratulated her on winning** the competition.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Hilda **stopped her dog from running** away.



I **asked my mother about buying** a new computer, but she said no.



# 55 Phrasal verbs

Some verbs in English have two or more words in them, and usually have a new meaning when they are used together. These are called phrasal verbs.

See also: Verb patterns with objects **53**  
Prepositions **105** Separable phrasal verbs **R20**  
Inseparable phrasal verbs **R21**

## 55.1 PHRASAL VERBS

Phrasal verbs have a verb plus one or more particles (prepositions or adverbs.)  
The particle often changes the usual meaning of the verb.

PHRASAL VERB

I **get up** early every day.

Verb      Particle



### HOW TO FORM

The particle always comes after the verb.  
The verb changes form to match the subject as usual. The particle never changes form.

The verb takes the third person "-s."

He **gets up**. ✓

He **get ups**. ✗  
This is wrong. The particle should never change.

He **up gets**. ✗  
This is wrong. The particle should come after the verb.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

You **work out** at the gym.



My cat sometimes **runs away**.



They don't **eat out** very often.



Do you always **turn up** late?



Questions are formed in the usual way.

Negatives are formed in the usual way.

He **doesn't go out** when he's tired.



She **chills out** in the evening.



We can **check into** the hotel now.



Do they **meet up** most weekends?





## 55.2 PHRASAL VERBS IN DIFFERENT TENSES

When phrasal verbs are used in different tenses, the verb changes, but the particle remains the same.

PRESENT SIMPLE

I **work out** every week.

PAST SIMPLE

I **worked out** yesterday.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

I **am working out** right now.

FUTURE WITH "WILL"

I **will work out** tomorrow.

The particle  
never changes.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I **cleaned up** the kitchen last night.



Their car is always **breaking down**.



I think we're lost! We should have **looked up** the route.



She doesn't **dress up** very often.



You should **go over** your answers again.



I am **counting on** Rajiv to give the presentation next week.



I can't believe she **turned down** the job.



I **met up** with my friends last weekend.



I'm still **getting over** the flu.



When will they **grow up**?

### 55.3 SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If a phrasal verb has a direct object, it can sometimes go between the verb and the particle. Phrasal verbs that do this are called "separable" phrasal verbs.

He is picking up litter.

The object can go after the particle.

He is picking litter up.

The object can also go between the verb and the particle.

He is picking it up.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I turned on the light.



I turned the light on.

Can you pick up that box?



Can you pick that box up?

You should throw away those old shoes.



You should throw those old shoes away.

I was annoyed because he woke up the baby.



I was annoyed because he woke her up.

I always fill up the water jug when it's empty.



I always fill it up when it's empty.

#### COMMON MISTAKES SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If the direct object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and the particle.

Pronoun

He picked it up. ✓

The pronoun cannot go at the end of the sentence.

He picked up it. ✗

## 55.4 INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated. The object must always come after the particle; it can never sit between the particle and the verb. This is true whether the object is a noun or a pronoun.



The verb and the particle must stay together.

We had to run to **get on** the train. ✓

We had to run to get the train on. ✗

This is wrong. The object can't sit between the verb and the particle.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I need to **go over** my notes.



I **ran into** her at the supermarket.



Susan really **takes after** her father, they're very similar.



**Drop by** the house any time you like.



I've **come across** a new recipe.



He **sleeps in** most Saturdays.



I'm **taking care of** my sister's children tonight.



They will have to **do without** a trip this summer.



It's great to **hear from** you!



**Get on** this bus for the beach.



Caterpillars **turn into** butterflies.



**Get off** that bicycle if you don't have a helmet.



He has **fallen behind** the rest of the class this year.



I am **looking into** visiting somewhere warm.





## 55.5 THREE-WORD PHRASAL VERBS

Three-word phrasal verbs have a verb, a particle, and a preposition. The particle and preposition often change the usual meaning of the verb.



## INTONATION

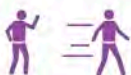
In spoken English, the stress is on the middle word of a three-word phrasal verb.

**look up to**   **get along with**   **look forward to**

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



We have **run out of** coffee, so I'll get some more.



You're walking too fast, I can't **keep up with** you.



I must have dropped my keys when I was **getting out of** the car.

### TIP

Most, but not all, three-word phrasal verbs are inseparable.

## 55.6 "GET BACK FROM"

"Get back from" can be separable or inseparable depending on the context.

When "get back from" means "to return from," it is always **inseparable**.

I **got back from** Italy yesterday.



When "get back from" means "to retrieve from" it is **separable**. The object must go between "get" and "back."

I need to **get** the lawn mower **back from** Tina.



## 55.7 NOUNS BASED ON PHRASAL VERBS

Some nouns are made from phrasal verbs, often formed by joining the verb and the particle together. When these words are spoken, the stress is usually on the verb.



The teacher asked me to **hand out** the exam papers.

Verb

Particle



The teacher gave us a **handout** for the lesson.

Stress is on the first syllable.

Sometimes, the noun is formed by putting the particle in front of the verb. In these cases, the spoken stress is usually on the particle.



Oh no! It was sunny and now it's **pouring down**.



We have a rainy season with daily **downpours**.

Stress is on the first syllable.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The company is trying to **cut back** on staff expenses.



Not another **cutback**! The company must be in serious trouble.

It's a shame that he wants to **drop out** of school.



We've had a surprisingly high percentage of **dropouts** in the class.

We want to **get away** and go somewhere sunny this winter.



A trip to Australia sounds like a fabulous **getaway**.

# 56 Modal verbs

Modal verbs are very common in English. They are used to talk about a variety of things, particularly possibilities, obligations, and deductions.

See also:

Present simple negative 2

Forming questions 34 Types of verbs 49

## 56.1 USES OF MODAL VERBS

English has many modal verbs. Each modal verb can be used in several different contexts.

### ABILITY

I **can** speak three languages.  
I **can't** read Latin because it's too difficult.  
I **couldn't** study it when I was at school.



### PERMISSION

You **can** have more cake if you want.  
You **may** take as much as you like.  
**Could** I have another slice of cake?



### REQUESTS

**Can** / **Could** you give me a ride home later?  
**Would** you email James for me, please?  
**Will** you lock up the office tonight?



### OFFERS

**Can** I help you with those?  
**May** I take one of those for you?  
**Shall** I carry some of your bags?



### SUGGESTIONS AND ADVICE

You **should** / **ought to** go to the doctor.  
You **could** try the new medicine.



### OBLIGATION

You **must** arrive on time for work.  
You **must not** be late for work.



### LOGICAL DEDUCTIONS

It **can't** be Jane because she's on vacation.  
It **could** / **might** / **may** be Dave. I don't know.  
It **must** be Tom, since nobody else ever calls.





## 56.2 MODAL VERB FORMATIONS

Modal verbs share certain characteristics. They don't change form to match the subject, and they are always followed by a main verb in its base form. Their question and negative forms are made without "do."

| SUBJECT                                   | MODAL VERB | BASE FORM | REST OF SENTENCE      |
|---|------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| I / You /<br>He / She / It /<br>We / They | can        | play      | the piano quite well. |

The modal verb stays the same for any subject.

The main verb stays in its base form.

Negatives are formed by adding "not" between the modal verb and main verb.

You **should** run a marathon.



You **should not** run a marathon.



Questions are usually formed by swapping the subject and the modal verb.

They **should** visit the castle.



**Should** they visit the castle?



"Ought to" and "have to" are exceptions because they use "to" before the base form. "Ought to" is a more formal way of saying "should," and "have to" means "must." They both act like normal verbs.

You { **ought to**  
**have to** } learn how to drive.



# 57 Ability

"Can" is a modal verb that describes what someone is able to do. It is used in different forms to describe past and present abilities.

**See also:**  
Present simple **1**  
Future with "will" **18**

## 57.1 "CAN / CANNOT / CAN'T"

"Can" goes between the subject and the main verb.  
The verb after "can" goes in its base form.

**I can ride a bicycle.**



"Can" is always the same. It doesn't change with the subject.

**He can play the guitar.**



Base form of verb.

The negative form of "can" is "cannot" or "can't."

**I {cannot can't} sing jazz songs.**

The more common, short form of "cannot."



### TIP

The long negative form "cannot" is always spelled as one word, not two words.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Janet can play tennis.**



**He cannot climb the tree.**



**Bob can swim well.**



**They can't lift the box.**



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

**I / You / He / She  
It / We / They**

"CAN / CANNOT / CAN'T"

**can  
cannot  
can't**

BASE FORM

**ride**

OBJECT

**a bicycle.**

## 57.2 "COULD" FOR PAST ABILITIES

"Could" is the past form of "can" and is used to talk about an ability in the past. "When" plus a time setting can be used to say when someone had the ability.



The time frame can be set with a phrase about an age, day, or year.

**I can't** climb trees now, but **I could** when I was younger.

Describes a present ability.

Describes a past ability.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

When I was a student, **I could** study all night before an exam.



When Milo was eight, **he could** play the violin.



Negative form.

**I couldn't** go to China last year because it was too expensive.



Last year **she couldn't** run very far, but yesterday she ran a marathon.



## 57.3 "CAN" IN THE FUTURE

It is not grammatically possible to talk about the future using "can." "Will be able to" is used instead.

At the moment, **I can** play the trombone quite well.



If I work harder, **I will be able to** play at concerts.

"Will can" is incorrect.

The negative is formed with "not able to" or "unable to."

Unfortunately, **I can't** read music very well.



If I don't learn, **{ I won't be able to / will be unable to }** join the orchestra.

"Will be unable to" can also be used, but it's less common.



# 58 Permission, requests, and offers

"Can," "could," and "may" are used to ask permission to do something, or to ask someone to do something for you. They can also be used to offer to help someone.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Modal verbs 56

## 58.1 ASKING PERMISSION AND MAKING REQUESTS

"Can" is the most common modal verb used to ask permission or to make a request.

Can I have some popcorn?



Yes, you can.

Informal answers use "can" as well.

"Could" replaces "can" for more formal situations, such as in business or to talk to strangers.

Excuse me, could I sit here, please?



I'm sorry, but that seat is taken.

Negative answers can be more polite by adding "I'm sorry" or "I'm afraid."

"Please" is used in polite requests.

"May" can also be used in formal situations.

May I make an appointment?



Of course.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Can I borrow your pen?



Excuse me, could you open the door for me?



Can I have this in a smaller size?



May I reserve a table for 7pm?



## 58.2 MAKING OFFERS

"Can" and "may" can also be used to offer to do something for someone.

Can I help you carry those?

Yes, please.



"May" is only used for formal situations.

May I take your coat?

Yes, thank you.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Can I get you a drink?

That would be lovely.



My computer's broken again!

Can I help at all?



Good evening.  
May I take your order?

Yes, please.



Which way is the elevator?

It's on the left.  
May I help you with your bags?



## 58.3 SHALL FOR OFFERS AND SUGGESTIONS

"Shall" is used to find out if someone thinks a certain suggestion is a good idea. This is not often used in US English.

That bag looks heavy. Shall I carry it for you?

Yes, please.



Shall I open the window?

Good idea. it's far too hot in here.



# 59 Suggestions and advice

The modal verb “could” can be used to offer suggestions. “Could” is not as strong as “should.” It communicates gentle advice.

See also:

Conditional sentences 29 Types of verbs 49

Modal verbs 56

## 59.1 “SHOULD” FOR ADVICE

“Should” is used when the speaker wants to make a strong suggestion.

It’s very sunny. You **should** wear a hat.

“Should” comes before the advice.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

It might rain. You **should** take your umbrella with you.



You’re sick. I don’t think you **should** go to work today.



There’s ice on the roads. You **shouldn’t** drive tonight.



Which hat **should** I buy? They’re all so cool.



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

You

“SHOULD”

**should**

MAIN VERB

**wear**

REST OF SENTENCE

**a hat.**

“Should” is a modal verb, so it stays the same no matter what the subject is.

“Should” is followed by the base form of the main verb.



## 59.2 "OUGHT TO" FOR ADVICE

"Ought to" is a more formal and less common way to say "should."  
It is not usually used in the negative or question forms.



You { **should**  
**ought to** } wear a scarf. It's very cold outside.

## 59.3 "IF I WERE YOU"

English uses "if I were you" to give advice in second conditional sentences. The advice is expressed using "I would."

I don't know if I should take this job.



If I **were** you, I would take it.

English uses "were," not "was," in this context.

The advice comes after "I would."

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I'm going to the concert tonight.



If I **were** you, I'd leave early. The traffic is awful.

The suggestion can come first without changing the meaning.

I think I'll buy this shirt.



I wouldn't buy it if I **were** you. I don't like the pattern.

There is no comma before "if."

## 59.4 "HAD BETTER"

"Had better" can also be used to give very strong or urgent advice that can have a negative consequence if it is not followed.



{ **You had better**  
**You'd better** } leave for school! It's already 8.45.

## 59.5 "COULD" FOR SUGGESTIONS

"Could" is often used to suggest a solution to a problem. It states a possible course of action without necessarily recommending it.

"Could" means that the action is a possibility; a choice that might solve the problem.

I hate my car!



Well, you **could** get a new one!



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

You **could** study science in college.



We **could** learn English in Canada next year.



If they need more space, they **could** buy a bigger house.



### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT

You

"COULD"

could

MAIN VERB

get

REST OF SENTENCE

a new car.

"Could" is a modal verb, so it doesn't change with the subject.

The main verb stays in its base form.

## 59.6 "COULD" AND "OR" FOR SUGGESTIONS

When people give suggestions using "could," they often give more than one option to choose from.



Our friends are coming over for dinner, but the oven's broken.



We could make a salad or we could order a pizza.

"Or" is used to give an alternative suggestion.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.

Well, you could make a curry or lasagne.

The modal verb doesn't have to be repeated after "or."



What should I wear to Jan's wedding?

You could wear your new dress or a skirt.

If the main verb is the same for both suggestions, it isn't repeated after "or."

## 59.7 MAKING RECOMMENDATIONS

One of the most common ways of recommending something or making a suggestion is to use modal verbs.



You { could  
might } visit the park. It's beautiful.

General suggestion.



You { should  
ought to } visit the castle. It's great.

Stronger suggestion.



You must visit the palace. It is beautiful!

Very strong suggestion.

### TIP

Emphasis can be added by putting "really" in front of "should," "ought to," and "must."



# 60 Obligations

In English, "have to" or "must" are used when talking about obligations or things that are necessary. They are often used to give important instructions.

See also:

Future with "will" 18 Types of verbs 49

Modal verbs 56

## 60.1 OBLIGATIONS

"Must" and "have to" both express a strong need or obligation to do something.



You **must** / **have to** rest, or your leg won't heal.

"Must not" is a strong negative obligation. It means something is not allowed.



You **must not** get your bandage wet, or your leg might not heal properly.

"Don't have to" means something is not necessary, or there is no obligation.



You **don't have to** come again. Your leg is better.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

He **must** take two pills each morning and evening for the next two weeks.



She **must not** go back to work until her back is better.



**Do I have to** go back to the doctor again? I'm feeling so much better now.



## HOW TO FORM

"Must" does not change with the subject, but "have to" becomes "has to" in the third person singular. Both forms are followed by the base form of the main verb.

| SUBJECT | "MUST / HAVE TO"  | MAIN VERB | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------|---|-----------|------------------|
| She     | <b>must</b><br><b>has to</b><br><b>must not</b><br><b>doesn't have to</b> | take      | this medicine.   |



## COMMON MISTAKES "MUST NOT" AND "DON'T HAVE TO"

"Must not" and "don't have to" do not mean the same thing.

"Must not" is used to give an instruction that forbids someone from doing something. "Don't have to" is used to tell someone that it is not necessary that they do something.

**You **must not** use a calculator during this exam.**

[It is against the rules to use a calculator during this exam.]



**You **don't have to** use a calculator, but it might be useful.**

[You are allowed to use a calculator, but it is not required.]



## 60.2 "MUST" AND "HAVE TO" IN THE FUTURE

There is no future form of "must." The future of "have to" is formed with the auxiliary verb "will."

In some countries, people **{ must have to }** recycle. It's the law.

In the future, I think everyone **will have to** recycle.

↖ "Will must" is incorrect.



"Must not" does not have a future form. "Don't have to" can be used in the future by changing "don't" to "will not" or "won't."

One day, I hope I **will not have to** work so hard.



## 60.3 "MUST" AND "HAVE TO" IN THE PAST

There is no past form of "must." The past tense of "have to" is used instead.

For most jobs, you **{ must have to }** use a computer.

In the past, you **didn't have to** use a computer.



# 61 Making deductions

Modal verbs can also be used to talk about how likely or unlikely something is. They can be used to guess and make deductions about what has happened or is happening now.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Infinitives and participles 51 Modal verbs 56

## 61.1 SPECULATION AND DEDUCTION

The modal verbs “might” and “could” are used to talk about something with uncertainty.

“Might” and “could” can be used to talk about uncertainty.

John has a sore ankle. It { might could } be broken.

The modal verb doesn't change with the subject.

The modal verb is usually followed by the base form of the main verb.



“Might not” is used to describe negative things that are not certain.

It's not very swollen, so it might not be serious.

“Not” goes after the modal verb.



“Must” is often used to speculate about the present.

John must be very bored at home. He's usually so active.



“Cannot” and “can't” are used when someone is certain something is impossible.

John's leg { cannot can't } be broken. He walked to the doctor.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Fay's got a sore throat and isn't feeling well. She might have a cold.



I was so sick last week that I couldn't get out of bed.



My eyes are itchy and I have a runny nose. It could be hay fever.



I can't have the flu because I don't have a high temperature.





## 61.2 SPECULATION AND DEDUCTION ABOUT THE PAST

"**Must have**" with a past participle is used to speculate about the past when the speaker is sure something happened.

He just disappeared. Aliens **must have taken** him.

Past participle



"**Must**" can be replaced with "may," "might," or "could" when the speaker is not sure whether something happened or not.

They { **might**  
**may**  
**could** } **have taken** him to another planet.



"**Can't**" or "**couldn't**" can be used to refer to something that the speaker is certain did not happen.

It { **can't**  
**couldn't** } **have been** aliens, they don't exist.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Bethan didn't return my call yesterday. She **must have been** busy.



She **might have** forgotten to call me back.



She **might not have** written down my number correctly.



Paula **can't have** been at the party last night, she was at work.



I didn't see who knocked on the door, but it **may have** been the mailman.



What happened to my vase? The cat **must have** knocked it over.

# 62 Possibility

Modal verbs can be used to talk about possibility, or to express uncertainty. "Might" is the most common modal verb used for this purpose.

**See also:**

Present simple **1** Infinitives and participles **51**  
Modal verbs **56**

## 62.1 "MIGHT" FOR POSSIBILITY

"Might" can be added to different phrases to refer to past, present, or future possibilities.

### PAST POSSIBILITY

"MIGHT" + "HAVE" + PAST PARTICIPLE

I can't find the compass. I **might have dropped** it earlier.



### PRESENT POSSIBILITY

"MIGHT" + BASE FORM

I don't remember this path. We **might be** lost.



### FUTURE POSSIBILITY

"MIGHT" + "BASE FORM" + FUTURE TIME

It's very cold outside. It **might snow** later on.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

We **might have taken** a wrong turn at the river.



It **might be** windy at the top of the mountain.



"Not" always comes after  
"might" to form the negative.

Joe **might not come** walking with us next weekend.



### TIP

Questions with "might" are only used in very formal English.

## 62.2 "MIGHT" WITH UNCERTAINTY

Other phrases can be added to sentences with "might" to emphasize uncertainty about something.



I **might** take the bus home. I'm not sure.

I **don't know**. I **might** have more pizza.



## 62.3 PAST POSSIBILITY

As well as "might," other modal verbs can be used to talk about something that possibly happened in the past.



The copier isn't working. It **{ might  
may  
could }** have run out of paper.

[He thinks it is possible that the copier has run out of paper.]

These constructions can be used to talk about something that possibly did not happen in the past.



You **{ might not  
may not }** have plugged it in correctly.

[He thinks it is possible that the printer wasn't plugged in correctly.]

"Could not" can only be used when the speaker is certain that something did not happen.



You **couldn't have** changed the ink correctly.

[He is certain that the ink wasn't changed correctly.]



# 63 Articles

Articles are short words which come before nouns to show whether they refer to a general or a specific object. There are several rules telling which article, if any, should be used.

**See also:**

Singular and plural nouns **69** Countable and uncountable nouns **70** Superlative adjectives **97**

## 63.1 THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

The indefinite article "a" or "an" is used to talk about something in general.

I work in **a library**.

"A" is used to talk about the type of place where somebody works, not the specific building.



I work in **an office**.

"An" is used instead of "a" before words that start with a vowel.



The indefinite article is used to talk about a general thing among many of its type. The exact one is not yet known.

We are trying to buy **a house**.

The exact house they will buy is unknown.



The indefinite article is also used to show a noun belongs to a group or category.

Canada is **a very cold country**.

"Country" categorizes Canada, and "cold" describes it.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Dogs make **a great family pet**.



The indefinite article is used in the same way for negative statements.

Jim isn't **an artist**.



Do you want to come to **an exhibition**?

The indefinite article is used in the same way for questions.



Is there **a bank** near here?



## 63.2 "SOME"

"Some" replaces "a" or "an" in sentences with plural nouns.

Use "a" and "an" to talk about one thing.

"Hotel" is singular.

There is **a hotel** in the town.



There are **some hotels** in the town.



Use "some" to talk about more than one thing.

"Hotels" is plural.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There are **some banks** on Main Street.



There are **some children** in the park.



## 63.3 "SOME" AND "ANY" WITH QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES

"Some" is replaced by "any" to form questions and negatives.

There are **some cafés** in the town.

Are there **any cafés** in the town?



There are **some children** in the park.

There aren't **any children** in the park.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Are there **any museums**?



There aren't **any parks**.



Are there **any swimming pools**?



There aren't **any factories**.



## 63.4 THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

The definite article “the” is used to talk about a specific person or thing that everyone understands.

We went on a tour and **the guide** was excellent.

It is clear from the context that this means the tour guide.



When a person or thing has been mentioned already, “the” is used the next time the thing or person is talked about.

There’s a bus trip or a lecture. I’d prefer **the bus trip**.

The bus trip has already been mentioned.



The definite article is used before superlatives.

The Colosseum is probably **the most famous** site in Rome.

Superlative phrase.



The definite article is also used with unique objects.

I’m going to **the Trevi Fountain** before I leave.

There is only one Trevi Fountain.



It is also used for people with unique titles.

**The Pope** is visiting another country this week.

“Pope” is a title.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

What is **the biggest country** in the world?



I never take **the first train** to work in the morning.



I love this restaurant. **The waiters** are great.



I went to Paris and climbed **the Eiffel Tower**.



Did you buy those shoes from **the shoe shop** on Broad Lane?



**The President** will be speaking on TV tonight.





### 63.5 USING "THE" TO SPECIFY

"The" can be followed by a prepositional phrase or a defining relative clause to specify which thing someone is talking about.

The pictures **on the wall** are beautiful.



This makes it clear which pictures are being referred to.

The dog **that I saw earlier** was adorable.



This makes it clear which dog is being talked about.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The computers **in this office** are all too slow.



The books **that I bought** yesterday are for my son's birthday.



The students **in my classes** are very intelligent and dedicated.



The pastries **that they sell here** are absolutely delicious.



### 63.6 "THE" WITH ADJECTIVES FOR CERTAIN GROUPS

Some adjectives can be used with the definite article to refer to a group or class of people.

**Rich people** have bought most of the new houses in this town.



Almost all the houses here are owned by **the rich**.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Emergency treatment for **the injured** is essential.



Many charities try to protect **the poor**.



The media sometimes portrays **the young** as lazy.



**The elderly** often need the support of their families.



#### TIP

These phrases are plural in meaning, but it's incorrect to say "the youngs," etc.

## 63.7 THE ZERO ARTICLE

An article is not needed with uncountable and plural nouns used in a general context. This is known as the zero article.

I don't like the beach.  
I get **sand** everywhere.

Uncountable noun.

Plural noun.



You can see **famous sights** all over New York City.



The zero article is also used with some places and institutions when it is clear what their purpose is.

Liz is seven. She goes **to school** now.

She goes there to study, which is the purpose of schools, so no article is used.



Larry works at **the school** in Park Street.

The definite article is used to talk about the specific school where he works.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Coffee** is one of Colombia's major exports.



**Kangaroos** are common in Australia.



I am studying Engineering **in college** in Chicago.



Liz goes **to school** at 8am.



In the UK, **children** start school when they are five years old.



I've got so many **books**.



**Paris** is the capital of France.

Names of places often take the zero article.



Go **to bed**, Tom!



### 63.8 THE ZERO ARTICLE AND GENERIC "THE"

The zero article can be used with plural nouns to talk about a class of things in general. This can also be done with the definite article, plus a singular noun.

Referring to an invention, not an individual telescope.

**Telescopes**  
**The telescopes** } changed the way we see the night sky.



Referring to a species of animal, not an individual animal.

**Cheetahs**  
**The cheetahs** } can run faster than any other land animal.



Referring to a type of musical instrument, not an individual instrument.

**Violins are**  
**The violin is** } often the key instrument in an orchestra.



### 63.9 DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES WITH NAMES

The zero article is normally used with the name of a person.

This is my uncle, **Neil Armstrong**.



The definite article is used before a person's name to differentiate them from another person with the same name.

In this case, "the" is pronounced "thee."

He's not **the Neil Armstrong**, is he?  
[He isn't the famous person with that name, is he?]



The indefinite article is used when the focus is on a particular name, rather than the person.

I'm afraid there isn't  
a **"Joseph Bloggs"** on the list.  
[The particular name given is not on the list.]





# 64 Articles overview

## 64.1 USING ARTICLES

### SINGULAR NOUNS

Singular nouns must be used with an article. The definite article ("the") or indefinite article ("a / an") can be used, depending on whether the object is being spoken about in general or specific terms.



### INDEFINITE ARTICLE

"A" refers to cars in general, not the car he wants to buy.

He wants to buy **a new car**. ✓

I've got **a beautiful green coat**. ✓

"A" is used because the green coat is something new that is being introduced.

### PLURAL NOUNS

The indefinite article "a / an" cannot be used with plural nouns. "Some" is used instead for plural nouns when referring to an indefinite quantity of something.



The indefinite article cannot be used for plural nouns.

Sam bought **a new shoes** today. ✗

I've just planted **some roses**. ✓

"Some" suggests a limited number of roses, but the exact number is unknown.

### UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

The indefinite article is not usually used with uncountable nouns. The definite article is used to talk about uncountable nouns in specific terms, and the zero article is used to talk about them in general terms.



"A / an" cannot be used with uncountable nouns.

I left **a money** on the table. ✗

Children should drink **a milk**. ✗

The definite and indefinite articles are used in different situations, and this can depend on whether they are being used with a singular, plural, or uncountable noun.

**See also:**

Singular and plural nouns **69**

Countable and uncountable nouns **70**

## DEFINITE ARTICLE

"The" is used to talk about a specific car that the speaker and listener both know about.

Is **the** red car outside yours? ✓

I want to buy **the green coat** ✓  
hanging in the window.

The definite article is used to talk about plural nouns in specific terms.

**The shoes** Sam bought ✓  
were very expensive.

**The roses** you planted ✓  
outside are beautiful.

The speaker is referring to specific money that the listener already knows about, so the definite article is used.

I left **the money** on the table. ✓

Children should drink **the milk**. ✗

Milk is an uncountable noun which is being spoken about in general terms, so the definite article can't be used.

## ZERO ARTICLE

This is wrong. Singular countable nouns must have an article.

I've got **new car**. ✗

I've got beautiful **green coat**. ✗

No article is used because "shoes" is a plural noun being spoken about in a general context.

Sam is always buying **shoes**. ✓

**Roses** are a type of flower. ✓

Roses are being spoken about in general terms. There's no idea of a number.

No article is used because "money" is being spoken about in a general sense.

She earns a lot of **money**. ✓

Children should drink **milk**. ✓

"This," "that," "these," and "those" can be used as determiners before a noun to specify which noun is being talked about. They can also be used as pronouns to replace a noun in a sentence.

**See also:**

 Singular and plural nouns **69**

 Personal pronouns **77** Possession **80**

## 65.1 "THIS" AND "THAT" AS DETERMINERS

"This" and "that" are only used with singular nouns. "This" is used for something close, and "that" for something farther away.



**This** house is too big.

↖ The house is close to you.



**That** house is too small.

↖ The house is farther away from you.



**This** job is great.

↖ "This" refers to the job that the speaker is currently doing.



**That** job was boring.

↖ "That" refers to a job in the past that isn't being done anymore.

↖ "Was" is in the past tense.

"This" can also be used for something current or present, and "that" can be used for something absent or in the past.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



**This** essay is proving to be really difficult.



**That** cake in the window looks incredible.



I like **this** rabbit so much I want to take it home.



I'd like to see **that** play this weekend.



When I eat out I always order **this** rice dish.



**This** show is great, but I didn't like **that** other show as much.

↖ Uncountable nouns are only used with "this" and "that," never "these" and "those."

↖ "Other" can be used after "that" to stress that it is different to the first noun.



## 65.2 "THESE" AND "THOSE" AS DETERMINERS

"These" and "those" are only used with plural nouns. "These" is used for things close by or current. "Those" is used for things farther away or in the past.

**This** cake is delicious.



**These** cakes are delicious.



"These" is the plural of "this."

"These" and "those" go before plural nouns.

**That** sandwich tastes bad.



**Those** sandwiches look better.



"Those" is the plural of "that."

"These" and "those" go before plural nouns.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**These** new shoes are hurting my feet.



I hope **these** exams go well.



I don't think **these** vegetables are very fresh.



**These** books are so heavy! I can't carry them.



**These** books are so heavy! I can't carry them.



**Those** sunglasses look great on you!



I like the look of **those** Caribbean cruises..



I'll take **those** apples and **these** bananas, please.



### 65.3 "THIS" AND "THAT" AS PRONOUNS

"This" and "that" can replace singular nouns in a sentence. They point out a specific thing. "This" is used for something close, and "that" is used for something farther away.



**This** is my dog.

The dog is close to you.



**That** is my dog.

The dog is farther away from you.



"This" can also be used for something current or present, and "that" can be used for something absent or in the past.



**This** is a great party.

"This" means the party is happening now.



**That** was such a fun party yesterday.

"That" means the party has already happened.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**This** is a great honor. Thank you everyone for coming.



**This** has always been the most beautiful park.



**This** is the perfect laptop for creative work.



**This** is the best soup I've ever tasted.



**That** was so exciting.



If you could do a blow-dry, **that** would be great.



**That** sounded out of tune. I'd get the piano fixed.



**That** looks great. Is the car new?



## 65.4 "THESE" AND "THOSE" AS PRONOUNS

"These" and "those" can replace plural nouns in a sentence. "These" is used for things close by or current. "Those" is used for things farther away or in the past.

  
**This** is my bag.

  
**That** is my bag. 



"These" is the plural of "this."

  
**These** are my bags.

"Those" is the plural of "that."

  
**Those** are my bags. 

"These" and "those" are also used for contrast. "These" things belong to one person.

  
**These** are my bags and **those** are your bags. 

"Those" things belong to another person.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**These** are the best kind of shoes to wear when running.



I think **those** will probably taste better with sauce.



**These** are the only clothes I own.



**Those** aren't very good for you. Try **these** instead.



## 65.5 SUBSTITUTING WITH "THAT" AND "THOSE"

"That" and "those" can be used in place of a noun phrase to mean "the one" or "the ones."

The new policy is better than **that** of before.

"That" refers to "policy."



I disapprove of **those** who don't recycle.

"Those who" means "people who."





# 66 “No / none”

“No” and “none” both show the absence or lack of something. “No” is always used with a noun, whereas “none” replaces a noun in a sentence.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns **69**

Countable and uncountable nouns **70**

## 66.1 “NO”

“No” is only used with uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns.

There was **no** time to cook a meal.

[There wasn't any time to cook a meal.]

Uncountable noun.



I have **no** ingredients in my kitchen.

[I don't have any ingredients in my kitchen.]

Plural noun.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

This menu has **no** vegetarian options.



I would have booked a restaurant but there were **no** tables.



**No** waiters were available to take our order.



There are **no** recipes in this book that I haven't tried.



## 66.2 “NO” AND NOUN FOR EMPHASIS

Although “no” has the same meaning as “not any” in this context, “no” is often emphatic.

There wasn't **any** food left.

There was **no** food left!

This version of the sentence can indicate surprise or disappointment.



## 66.3 "NONE"

"None" can replace "no" plus noun to indicate a lack of something.

I wanted some pizza, but there was **none** left.

[I wanted some pizza, but there was no pizza left.]

"Left" shows that there was some pizza before.

"None of" is used before pronouns and nouns with determiners.

**None of** the pizza was left.



"None" can also be used on its own to answer a question about quantity.

How much pizza is there?



None.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I wanted the soup, but there was **none** left.



I would have bought balloons, but there were **none** in the shop.



I love this suit, but there are **none** here in my size.



**None of** the people eating at the restaurant enjoyed their food.



I offered my friends some chocolate, but they wanted **none of** it.



This restaurant has **none of** the food that I like.



"None" and "none of" can be more emphatic than "not any."

# 67 "Each / every"

"Each" and "every" are words that go before singular nouns to refer to all members of a group of people or things.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

## 67.1 "EACH" AND "EVERY"

In most cases, there is no difference in meaning between "each" and "every."

I buy more and more **{ each / every }** time I go shopping.



Means all the times.

**{ Each / Every }** place we stopped at was beautiful.



Means all the places.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The host made sure he greeted **each** guest at the party.



Last summer I went to visit my grandmother **every** day.



**Each** person on the beach was developing a bad sunburn.



I always try **every** kind of ice cream when I go abroad.



## COMMON MISTAKES "EACH" AND "EVERY"

Unlike "each," "every" cannot be used to talk about just two things.

She had an earring in **each** ear. ✓

She had an earring in **every** ear. ✗

She only has two ears, so "every" can't be used here.





## 67.2 "EACH"

"Each" is used to talk separately about every member of a group.



You must check **each** answer carefully.

"Each" is also used when talking about small numbers.



**Each** pencil is a different color.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I get more awake after **each** cup of coffee.



I took lots of time over **each** application I made.



**Each** player on my team contributed to our win.



**Each** friend who visited me brought a gift.



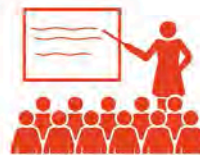
## 67.3 "EVERY"

"Every" is used when speaking about the whole group of something.



I want to eat **every** piece of this delicious pie.

"Every" is also used when talking about large numbers.



**Every** child has the right to an education.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Every** night I look up at all the stars in the sky.



My colleague says he's visited **every** country in the world.



**Every** fan in the stadium was cheering loudly.



I can't remember **every** hotel I've ever stayed in.



# 68 "Either / neither / both"

"Either," "neither," and "both" are used in situations where two options are being described. They indicate that one, two, or none of the options are possible.

## See also:

Articles **63** Singular and plural nouns **69**  
Personal pronouns **77**

## 68.1 "EITHER," "NEITHER," AND "BOTH"

"Either" means "one or the other" of two options and is used before a singular noun.

You could enter **either** tournament.

Indicates that there are two tournaments.



"Neither" means "not one and not the other" of two options and is used before a singular noun. It has the same meaning as a negative statement with "either."

**Neither** event is being shown on TV.

Singular noun.

[They're not showing either event on TV.]



"Both" means "each one of two" and is used before a plural noun, or after a plural pronoun.

I ran in **both** [the] races.

A determiner, such as "the," "these," or "my" can be used after "both."



I ran in **them both**.

A plural pronoun can go before "both."

## ANOTHER WAY TO SAY IT

"Either," "neither," and "both" can be used alone when the context is clear.



Would you like potatoes or salad with your steak?

**Either.**



**Neither.**



**Both.**



## 68.2 "NEITHER OF," "EITHER OF," AND "BOTH OF"

"Either of," "neither of," and "both of" are used before a plural pronoun or a determiner plus a plural noun.

"Bicycles" is a plural noun.

I could buy **either of** these bicycles,  
but I don't really need **either of** them.

"Them" is a plural pronoun.



We won **neither of** the races.  
**Neither of** us trained hard enough.



"Of" is optional after  
"both" when a determiner is  
used with the noun.

We train with **both (of)** our coaches.  
They are proud of **both of** us.



Plural personal pronouns "us," "you," and "them" can be used with "either of," "neither of," and "both of" as a subject as well as an object.

I danced with **both of** them.

"Them" is the object.



**Neither of** you can dance.

"You" is the subject.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I wasn't able to get tickets  
for **either of** the first heats.



**Neither of** the athletes  
are very fit.



I'm going to watch **both** the  
equestrian events later today.



**Either of** them could win the  
contest. It's hard to call.



We thought **neither of** them  
would be able to finish.



**Both of** you are strong  
contenders. You deserve to win.





### 68.3 "EITHER... OR," "NEITHER... NOR," AND "BOTH... AND"

"Either... or" and "neither... nor" are used to compare options, usually noun phrases, prepositional phrases, or clauses.

I want **either** the cake **or** the cookie.



**Neither** the cake **nor** the cookie tasted good.



"Nor" can only be used with "neither."

"Neither" is only used with a positive verb.

"Either... or" and "neither... nor" can be used with two or more options.

The first two options are separated with a comma.

I want to play **either** tennis, badminton, **or** squash.



**Neither** basketball, golf, **nor** hockey are the sports for me.



"Both... and" is the opposite of "neither... nor," but can only be used with two options.

I want **both** the cake **and** the cookie.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

We'll meet up on **either** Tuesday **or** Wednesday.



My teacher told me I could **neither** paint **nor** draw.



I invited **both** my grandmother **and** my uncle.



I'm going to play **either** tennis, basketball, **or** hockey tonight.



**Neither** sports **nor** exercise interest me.



I went to **both** the bakery **and** the butcher shop.



## 68.4 AGREEMENT AFTER "EITHER... OR" AND "NEITHER... NOR"

When "either... or" or "neither... nor" are used to join two nouns, the verb usually agrees with the second noun.

Either a tablet or a **laptop is** needed for the course.

The verb agrees with the second, singular noun.



Neither the teacher nor the **children were** happy.

The verb agrees with the second, plural noun.



If the second noun is singular and the first is plural, either a singular verb or a plural verb can be used.

Neither the **classrooms** nor the **office** { **has** / **have** } internet access.

The verb can be singular or plural.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Either a loan or a **grant is** available for financial help.



I hope either sandwiches or **soup is** on the menu today.



Either my brother or my **grandparents are** coming.



Either pens or **pencils are** suitable to use in the exam.



Neither the swimming pool nor the **gym is** open on Sundays.



Neither a shirt nor a **tie is** compulsory at school.



Neither the bread nor the **cakes are** ready yet.



Neither calculators nor **study notes are** allowed in the exam.



# 69 Singular and plural nouns

Nouns in English do not have a gender. They change form depending on whether they are singular, meaning there is one, or plural, meaning there is more than one.

See also:

Adjectives **92** Articles **63**

Irregular plurals **R24**

## 69.1 COMMON NOUNS

Common nouns often come after articles.  
Adjectives describe nouns.



car



banana



skirt



game



idea



thought

## 69.2 PROPER NOUNS

Nouns that refer to specific names of people, places, days, and months are called proper nouns, and begin with a capital letter.



**Egypt** is a beautiful country.

Egypt is a country, so it begins with a capital letter.

"Country" is a common noun.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I study at **Southern University**.



I can see **Mars** in the sky tonight.



The **Titanic** sank when it hit an iceberg.



My best friend is called **Jasmine**.



I was born in **Canada**.



I hope to someday win an **Oscar**.





### 69.3 SPELLING RULES FOR PLURALS

To make most nouns plural, "-s" is added to the singular noun.



book



books



toy



toys



### IRREGULAR PLURALS

For nouns ending in "-s," "-x," "-z," "-ch," and "-sh," "-es" is added.

watch



watches

brush



brushes

box



boxes

bus



buses

quiz



quizzes

When a word ends in a singular "-z," the "z" is doubled and "-es" added.

"Man" and "woman," and words made from them, such as in job names, have irregular plural forms.

man



men

woman



women

businessman



businessmen

businesswoman



businesswomen

For nouns ending in a consonant followed by a "-y," the "-y" is dropped and "-ies" is added.

dictionary



dictionaries

story



stories

Some other nouns have completely irregular plurals. A good dictionary can be used to check these.

child



children

person



people

For nouns ending in "-o," the plural is usually formed by adding "-es." If the noun ends in vowel plus "-o," the plural is formed by adding "-s."

echo



echoes

radio



radios

Some nouns do not change in the plural.

species



species

sheep



sheep

# 70 Countable and uncountable nouns

In English, nouns can be countable or uncountable. Countable nouns can be individually counted. Objects that aren't counted are uncountable.

See also:

Forming questions **34** Articles **63**  
Numbers **74** Quantity **75**

## 70.1 COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

"A," "an," or numbers are used to talk about countable nouns.  
"Some" can be used for both countable and uncountable nouns.

### COUNTABLE NOUNS

There is **an** egg. ●

There are **four** eggs. ●●●●

There are **some** eggs. 

### UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

Uncountable nouns are always used with verbs in the singular.

There is **some** rice. 

"Some" is always used with uncountable nouns, not "a," "an," or a number.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

 **a** sandwich


 **an** apple

 **some** bananas

 **two** burgers

 **some** milk


 **some** water

 **some** spaghetti

 **some** sugar


## 70.2 MAKING UNCOUNTABLE THINGS COUNTABLE

Uncountable nouns can become countable when the noun is in a container.

 **some** sugar



**a** bag of sugar

 **some** water



**three** bottles of water

 **some** cereal



**a** bowl of cereal

### 70.3 NEGATIVES

For both countable and uncountable nouns, "any" is used in negative sentences and questions.

#### COUNTABLE NOUNS

There are **some** eggs.

There aren't **any** eggs.

↖ The verb is plural.

Are there **any** eggs?

↖ The verb is plural.

#### UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

There is **some** rice.

There isn't **any** rice.


↖ The verb is singular.

Is there **any** rice?

↖ The verb is singular.

### 70.4 QUESTIONS ABOUT QUANTITIES

"Many" is used to ask questions about quantities of countable nouns, and "much" to ask questions about quantities of uncountable nouns.


How **many** eggs are there? 


↖ The verb is plural.


How **much** rice is there? 


↖ The verb is singular.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

How **many** cupcakes are there? 

How **many** apples are there? 

How **much** cheese is there? 

How **much** chocolate is there? 

#### ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES "MUCH" AND "MANY"

"Much" can only be used with uncountable nouns and the verb must always be singular.

How **much** pasta is there? 

How **many** pasta are there? 



# 71 Subject–verb agreement

One of the basic principles of English is that subjects and verbs must agree in number. Some subjects, however, can act like singular or plural nouns depending on the context.

See also:

Present simple 1

Singular and plural nouns 69

## 71.1 PLURAL NOUNS WITH SINGULAR AGREEMENT

Books and other works of art that end in a plural noun are used as singular for agreement.

Even though "tales" is plural, *The Canterbury Tales* is a single work of literature.

***The Canterbury Tales* was**  
first published in the 1400s.



Other nouns look like they are plural because they end in an "-s," but have singular agreement. These include many place names and academic subjects.

**Mathematics is** becoming  
a more popular subject.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



***Little Women* is** a novel by  
Louisa May Alcott.



**The Netherlands is** famous  
for its tulip industry.



**Gymnastics was** the most  
enjoyable sport at school.



**Politics is** often a topic for  
academic debate.



**Athletics was** an important part  
of the ancient Olympic Games.

## 71.2 COLLECTIVE NOUNS

Collective nouns have a singular form, but refer to a number of people or objects as a group. In US English they generally take a singular verb. In UK English they can often be used with either singular or plural verbs.



If the subject describes a singular body, then the verb form must be singular.

The **team** **is** getting a new manager next year.

[The team as a whole is getting a new manager.]

Subject describes a collection of individuals.

UK only.

The **team** **are** feeling excited about the news.

[Each individual member of the team is feeling excited.]

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The **society** **is** going to have a meeting next week.



The **society** **are** discussing how often they should meet.

The **band** **has** just released its new album.



The **band** **have** been on tour to promote their new album.

The **government** **is** located in the capital city.



The **government** **are** in talks with the US.

My **family** **is** bigger than most other families I know.



My **family** **are** going away together for the first time in years.

The **company** **has** hired some new staff.



The **company** **have** been busy baking for a charity cake sale.

# 72 Abstract and concrete nouns

Most abstract nouns are uncountable. Some, however, can be either countable or uncountable, and the two forms often mean slightly different things.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns **69**

Countable and uncountable nouns **70**

## 72.1 ABSTRACT AND CONCRETE NOUNS

Abstract nouns refer to ideas, events, concepts, feelings, and qualities that do not have a physical form. Concrete nouns are things that can be seen, touched, heard, or smelled.

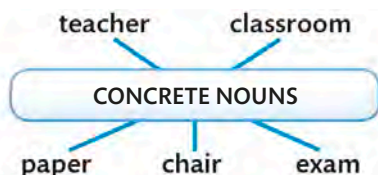


He has a lot of **books**, but not much **knowledge**.

"Books" is a countable, concrete noun.

"Knowledge" is an uncountable, abstract noun.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I can't wait to prepare for this **dinner party**.



I'm going to get my **car** fixed sometime soon.



I'm having **difficulty** logging on to my computer.



I need to come up with better **ideas** to keep my boss happy.



## 72.2 COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE ABSTRACT NOUNS

Some abstract nouns have both countable and uncountable forms. The forms have a slight difference in meaning, with the countable form being specific and the uncountable form being more general.

### COUNTABLE

I've been there a few **times**.

Each "time" is a specific occasion.



He has had many **successes**.

"Successes" are the specific achievements.



It has some great **qualities**.

"Qualities" refers to specific features.



We learned several new **skills**.

These are the particular abilities learned.



I've had some **thoughts** about it.

These are several specific thoughts.



This city has a great mix of **cultures**.

This refers to several different cultures.



There's a range of **abilities** in class.

"Abilities" refers to a variety of different skill levels.



### UNCOUNTABLE

There's plenty of **time** left.

"Time" refers to the concept in general.

Hard work leads to **success**.

"Success" refers to achievement in general.

It has a reputation for **quality**.

"Quality" refers to a high standard.

It takes **skill** to do that job.

"Skill" is the general ability to do something.

The task requires **thought**.

"Thought" refers to the process of thinking.

The museum is filled with **culture**.

"Culture" refers to items of art and history.

She has great **ability** in writing.

"Ability" refers to general skill.

# 73 Compound nouns

Compound nouns are two or more nouns that act as a single unit. The first noun(s) modifies the last, in a similar way to an adjective.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

Adjectives 92

## 73.1 COMPOUND NOUNS

Two nouns can go together to talk about one thing.

Table tennis is a form of tennis played on a table.

On Tuesdays I play **table tennis**.



The first noun is usually singular, even if the meaning is plural.

A picture book is a book of pictures, but "picture" stays singular.

My baby sister loves her **picture book**.



Sometimes, the first noun is plural.

My brother always plays on his **games console**.

"Games" is plural.



Some compound nouns are written as two separate words, some as one word, and some with a hyphen between the two. There are no clear rules for this, but good dictionaries can be used to check.



toothbrush



bus stop



six-pack

Hyphen

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



The meeting is in the **town hall**.



I buy tickets at the **ticket office**.



I eat dinner at the **kitchen table**.



We were in a **cycle race**.



I'm having my 44<sup>th</sup> **birthday party**.



I've always wanted a **sailboat**.

### 73.2 LONGER COMPOUND NOUNS

Two or more nouns can be put with another noun to modify it. This structure is common in newspaper headlines in order to save space.

I came first in the **table tennis tournament**.



**Bank robbery ringleader capture** confirmed.



This means "the capture of the ringleader of the bank robbery" has been confirmed.

### 73.3 PLURAL COMPOUND NOUNS

To make a compound noun plural, the final noun becomes plural.

The **summer party** was fun.



**Summer parties** are always fun.

"Party" becomes "parties."

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



**Restaurant chains** are reliable when you need a quick meal.



I have a collection of **teapots**.



I organize my **bookcases** when they start to look messy.



I spend a lot of time waiting at **bus stops**.



# 74 Numbers

Cardinal numbers are used for counting and saying how many of something there are. Ordinal numbers give the position of something in an ordered list.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns **69**

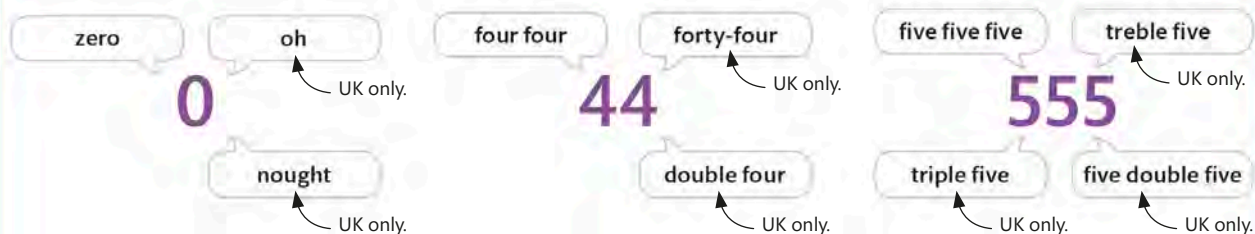
Quantity **75** Approximate quantity **76**

## 74.1 CARDINAL NUMBERS

|                       |                       |                         |                         |                        |                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>1</b><br>one       | <b>2</b><br>two       | <b>3</b><br>three       | <b>4</b><br>four        | <b>5</b><br>five       | <b>6</b><br>six           |
| <b>7</b><br>seven     | <b>8</b><br>eight     | <b>9</b><br>nine        | <b>10</b><br>ten        | <b>11</b><br>eleven    | <b>12</b><br>twelve       |
| <b>13</b><br>thirteen | <b>14</b><br>fourteen | <b>15</b><br>fifteen    | <b>16</b><br>sixteen    | <b>17</b><br>seventeen | <b>18</b><br>eighteen     |
| <b>19</b><br>nineteen | <b>20</b><br>twenty   | <b>21</b><br>twenty-one | <b>22</b><br>twenty-two | <b>30</b><br>thirty    | <b>40</b><br>forty        |
| <b>50</b><br>fifty    | <b>60</b><br>sixty    | <b>70</b><br>seventy    | <b>80</b><br>eighty     | <b>90</b><br>ninety    | <b>100</b><br>one hundred |

## 74.2 SAYING NUMBERS

In US English, people say "zero" for the number "0," whereas in UK English, other words for "0" are possible. When listing repeated numbers, for example part of a phone number, in US English each number is said individually. In UK English, other expressions are possible.



## 74.3 LARGE NUMBERS

You can say "one hundred" or "a hundred." Both are correct. Don't add "s" to "hundred," "thousand," or "million."

100  
one hundred  
a hundred

101  
one hundred and one

200  
two hundred  
No "s" at the end.

1,000  
one thousand  
a thousand

1,200  
one thousand, two hundred

3,000  
three thousand

1,000,000  
one million  
a million

1,300,000  
one million, three hundred thousand

40,000,000  
forty million

Commas are used to separate long rows of figures.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

In UK English, add "and" before the last two numbers to say numbers higher than one hundred. In US English, this is considered informal.

2,876  
two thousand, eight hundred and seventy-six  
"And" goes before "seventy-six."

54,041  
fifty-four thousand and forty-one

100,922  
one hundred thousand, nine hundred and twenty-two

296,308  
two hundred and ninety-six thousand, three hundred and eight

Use commas to separate millions, thousands, and hundreds.

1,098,283  
one million, ninety-eight thousand, two hundred and eighty-three

## 74.4 SIMILAR SOUNDING NUMBERS

It is important to stress the correct syllable in these numbers to avoid confusion.

Stress the last syllables.

13 thirteen

14 fourteen

15 fifteen

16 sixteen

17 seventeen

18 eightteen

19 ninteen

Stress the first syllables.

30 thirty

40 fourty

50 fifty

60 sixty

70 seventy

80 eightty

90 ninty

## 74.5 ORDINAL NUMBERS

**1st**

first

**2nd**

second

**3rd**

third

**4th**

fourth

**5th**

fifth

**6th**

sixth

**7th**

seventh

**8th**

eighth

**9th**

ninth

**10th**

tenth

**11th**

eleventh

**12th**

twelfth

**13th**

thirteenth

**14th**

fourteenth

**15th**

fifteenth

**16th**

sixteenth

**17th**

seventeenth

**18th**

eighteenth

**19th**

nineteenth

**20th**

twentieth

**21st**

twenty-first

**22nd**

twenty-second

**30th**

thirtieth

**40th**

fortieth

**50th**

fiftieth

**60th**

sixtieth

**70th**

seventieth

**80th**

eightieth

**90th**

ninetieth

**100th**

one-hundredth

## 74.6 DATES

In the US, people often describe dates by writing cardinal numbers and saying ordinal numbers.

In the UK, people use ordinal numbers to write and say dates.

In US English, the number is written after the month.

May eighteenth

His birthday is on

May 18 (US)

May the 18th (UK)

the 18th of May (UK)

May the eighteenth

the eighteenth of May





## 74.7 FRACTIONS

You might see fractions written out as words. Aside from “half” ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) and “quarter” ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), the bottom number of a fraction is written or spoken as an ordinal number.

$\frac{1}{4}$

a quarter

Use ordinal numbers for the bottom of a fraction.

$\frac{1}{3}$

a third

$\frac{1}{2}$

a half

Use cardinal numbers for the top of a fraction.

$\frac{3}{5}$

three fifths

$1\frac{1}{2}$

one and a half

Use “and” to link a whole number and a fraction.

## 74.8 DECIMALS

Decimals are always written as numbers, not words. The decimal point is spoken as “point,” and all numbers after the decimal point are spoken separately.

There are three ways of saying decimals that begin with 0.

point five

0.5

nought point five

UK only.

zero point five

1.7

one point seven

3.97

Decimal points are written in English using a period, or full stop.

three point nine seven

This is not said as “three point ninety-seven.”

## 74.9 PERCENTAGES

The % symbol is written and spoken as “percent.” “Per cent” is also sometimes written in UK English. Percentages are normally written as numbers, not words.

1%

one percent

99%

ninety-nine percent

55.5%

fifty-five point five percent

12%

twelve per cent

70%

seventy per cent

100%

one hundred per cent

# 75 Quantity

In English there are many ways to express general or specific quantities, say whether quantities are adequate, and compare different quantities.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

Countable and uncountable nouns 70

## 75.1 USING QUANTITY PHRASES

English has different phrases for quantities when the exact number is not known.

"Some" is used when there are more than one, but the exact quantity is unknown.

There are **some** buildings.



"A few" is used for small numbers.

There are **a few** buildings.



"Lots of" is used for large numbers.

There are **lots of** buildings.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

There are **some** very old trees in my local park.



There are **a few** items on the menu that I'd like to try.



There are **a few** sights that I'd like to see while I'm here.



There are **lots of** mountains in the Alps that I'd love to climb.



There are **some** vegetables that I really don't like.



There are **a few** cars parked outside my house.



**Lots of** my friends rely on trains to get to work.



There are **lots of** people waiting outside the gallery.



## 75.2 "ENOUGH / TOO MANY" WITH COUNTABLE NOUNS

"Enough," "not enough," and "too many" are used to talk about quantities of countable nouns, which are objects or things that can be easily counted.



We need four eggs.  
Do we have **enough**?

"Enough" is used  
for questions.



We have two eggs. That's **not enough**.

Indicates there are too few.



We have four eggs. That's **enough**.

"Enough" is the correct amount.



Don't use five eggs. That's **too many**.

Indicates more than enough.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There are **enough** apples here.

I **don't** have **enough** shoes.

There **aren't enough** employees.

You have **too many** clothes.

## 75.3 "ENOUGH / TOO MUCH" WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

"Enough," "not enough," and "too much" are used to talk about amounts of uncountable nouns, which are things that cannot easily be counted.



We need eight ounces of flour. Do we have **enough**?



**not enough** flour

Indicates too little.



**enough** flour

Indicates the  
correct amount.



**too much** flour

Indicates more than is  
needed or wanted.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There is **enough** milk.

There **isn't enough** time.

I **don't** have **enough** energy.

There is **too much** food.



## 75.4 "A LOT OF" AND "LOTS OF"

"A lot of" and "lots of" are commonly used informally before uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns to indicate that there is a large quantity of something.

**A lot of**  
**Lots of** } people play sports to keep fit.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There was **a lot of** food at the event.



The charity received **lots of** donations.



The event raised **a lot of** money.



**Lots of** people enjoy charity events.



## 75.5 "LITTLE" FOR SMALL AMOUNTS

"Little" is used with uncountable nouns to say that there is not much of something in UK English. It emphasizes how small the amount is.

**little** = not much

I have **little** money left. I can't afford to visit the wildlife park.



"Little" can also be used as a pronoun to mean "not much."

**Little** can be done about the decreasing number of red squirrels.



"A little" is used with uncountable nouns to mean "some." It emphasizes that the amount, though small, is enough.

**a little** = some

I have **a little** money left. Should we visit the wildlife park?



Informally, "a (little) bit of" can be used instead of "a little."

There's **a little bit of** the park that we haven't seen yet.



## 75.6 "FEW" FOR SMALL NUMBERS

"Few" is used with plural countable nouns to say that there are not many of something. It emphasizes how small the number is.

**few** = not many

There are **few** rare birds here.  
We probably won't see any.

"A few" is used with plural countable nouns to mean "some." It emphasizes that the number, though small, is enough.

**a few** = some

There are **a few** rare birds here.  
We might see one.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

"Few" can also be used as a pronoun to mean "not many."

**Few** are willing to contribute to the upkeep of the national park.



"Very" can be used to stress that the number of something is even smaller.

I wanted to see an owl, but **very few** can be seen during the day.



## 75.7 "QUITE A FEW" AND "QUITE A BIT (OF)" FOR BIG QUANTITIES

The phrases "quite a bit of" and "quite a few" are understatements that actually mean "a lot" or "many."

**quite a few** = many

The park is home to **quite a few** species.



**quite a bit of** = a lot of

There is **quite a bit of** open space for the animals.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Quite a few** of the students in my class don't like History.



There are **quite a few** books that I'd like to read.



There's still **quite a bit of** snow on the ground.



She ate **quite a bit of** cake at her birthday party.



## 75.8 "MORE"

"More" is used to show that there is a greater quantity or amount of something. It is used with both countable and uncountable nouns.

I'm buying **more** cookies.

"Cookies" is a countable noun.



We need **more** milk.

"Milk" is an uncountable noun.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I like spending **more** time with my family.

Our new house has **more** space.

We raised **even more** money for charity.

"Even" can be added for emphasis.

**More and more** people are donating.

"More and more" shows that the amount is increasing over time.

## 75.9 "FEWER" AND "LESS"

"Fewer" and "less" are used to show that there is a smaller quantity or amount of something. "fewer" belongs with plural countable nouns and "less" with uncountable nouns.

**Fewer** people drive cars these days.

"People" is a plural countable noun.



Traveling by bus or train uses **less** fuel.

"Fuel" is an uncountable noun.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There are **fewer** whales in the oceans nowadays.



We need to spend **less** money.



**Fewer** people enjoy gardening these days.



There is much **less** traffic today.







## COMMON MISTAKES "FEWER" AND "LESS"

It is important to remember the distinction between countable and uncountable nouns when using "fewer" and "less."

"Fewer" is only used with plural countable nouns.

"Less" is only used with uncountable nouns.



I have **fewer** potatoes than I need. ✓



I have **less** potatoes than I need. ✗



I have **fewer** flour than the recipe requires. ✗



I have **less** flour than I need. ✓



## 75.10 "MORE THAN," "LESS THAN," AND "FEWER THAN"

"More than" is used when talking about amounts or quantities of countable and uncountable nouns.

Lions eat **more than** 15 pounds of meat each day.



"Fewer than" is used for groups of people or things.

There are **fewer than** 3,500 tigers in the wild.



"Less than" is used when talking about amounts, distances, time, and money.

The wildlife park costs **less than** \$5 to visit.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The committee holds meetings **more than** 5 times a month.



There were **more than** 100 people at the event.



Charity workers are paid on average **less than** \$10 an hour.



The charity survives with **fewer than** 20 volunteers.



There are **fewer than** 50 tickets left for the charity concert.



You can donate **less than** the recommended amount.



# 76 Approximate quantity

If specific figures are known, it can be useful to give them. However, more general terms may be needed if figures are not known, or to avoid repetition.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

Numbers 74 "As... as" comparisons 96

## 76.1 APPROXIMATE QUANTITIES

There are certain quantifying phrases used in English when exact figures are not known, or not necessary to give.



3 out of 15 students live off campus.

In some cases, students live off campus.

"Some" is very unspecific. The only numbers it could not mean in this example are none, one, or 15.

### TIP

"Minority" and "majority" are often qualified, for example "small minority" or "vast majority."

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



In a minority of cases,  
In a few cases,

A minority is less than half, but often refers to much less than half.

employers provide funding for education.



In most cases,  
In the majority of cases,

"Most" and "majority" refer to more than half.

students can contact their professors online.



In some cases,  
In a number of cases,

These unspecific references could mean a majority or minority of cases.

students can live in dorms on campus.

## 76.2 APPROXIMATE STATISTICS

Statistics can be made more general by modifying them with words such as “approximately,” “about,” “just,” “well,” or “almost.”



**Approximately**  
**About** } half of the students are from Europe.

Indicate that the quantity is not exact.



**Just under** a third of the assessment consists of coursework.

Indicates that the difference is small.



**Well over** 50 percent of the course is online.

Indicates that the difference is large.



**Almost** all of the lessons are one hour long.

Indicates that the number is slightly less.

## 76.3 SURPRISING NUMBERS

Certain expressions are used to show that a particular number or quantity is surprising.



Other universities charge **as much as** €100 for this service.

This indicates that €100 is a surprisingly large amount of money.



For **as little as** \$5 per semester, you can join the club.

This indicates that \$5 is a surprisingly small amount of money.



There are **as many as** 25 free student events each month.

This indicates that 25 is a surprisingly large number of events.



The library is generally closed for **as few as** 2 days a month.

This indicates that 2 is a surprisingly small number of days.



# 77 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns are used to replace nouns in a sentence. They can refer to people or things and have different forms depending on whether they are a subject or an object.

See also:

Verb patterns with objects **53**

Possession **80** Contractions **R13**

## 77.1 SUBJECT PRONOUNS

Subject pronouns replace the subject of a sentence. They are used to avoid repetition, or where a name is not known. There are no formal or informal forms of pronouns in English.



Who's **he**?

The subject pronoun "he" is used because the speaker doesn't know the person's name.

The verbs "be" and "have" are often contracted with pronouns.

That's Andy. **He's** a policeman.

"He" refers to Andy to avoid repetition.



## HOW TO FORM

The pronoun used depends on how many nouns it is replacing, and person (first, second, or third.)

|          | FIRST PERSON | SECOND PERSON | THIRD PERSON                   |
|----------|--------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| SINGULAR | <b>I</b>     | <b>you</b>    | <b>he</b> <b>she</b> <b>it</b> |
| PLURAL   | <b>we</b>    | <b>you</b>    | <b>they</b>                    |

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I'm** turning 25 next week.



**You** are a great actor.



**He** likes driving fast.



Stuart and **I** are going climbing.



**They** complain every time.



**You** make a great team.



## 77.2 OBJECT PRONOUNS

Object pronouns replace the object of a sentence. Most of them have a different form from the equivalent subject pronoun.


Animals love Lizzy.

↓

Animals love **her**.

"Lizzy" is the object.

"Her" replaces "Lizzy."



There is no difference between direct and indirect object pronouns.


I gave **her** the puppy.

↓

The puppy loves **her**.

"Her" is the indirect object.

"Her" is the direct object.



### TIP

"You" is the same whether it is singular, plural, a subject, or an object.

## HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT |    |     |     |     |    |      |
|---------|----|-----|-----|-----|----|------|
| I       | we | you | he  | she | it | they |
| ↓       | ↓  | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓  | ↓    |
| me      | us | you | him | her | it | them |
| OBJECT  |    |     |     |     |    |      |

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I want to tell **you** that I'm sorry.



"All" can be used to show that "you" is plural.

Sam invited **you** all to the party.



Dave asked **me** to go with **him**.



We're sad that **he** won't come with **us**.



**It** was a very difficult time for **them**.



Georgia wanted **it** for Christmas.



# 78 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns show that the subject of a verb is the same as its object. They can also be used in other situations to add emphasis.

See also:

Verbs patterns with objects 53

Personal pronouns 77

## 78.1 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Reflexive pronouns in English are formed by adding the suffix “-self” or “-selves” to simple pronouns.

The subject pronoun refers to the person doing the action.

A reflexive pronoun is used when the same person is affected by the action.



**He** cut **himself** while chopping vegetables.

### HOW TO FORM

| OBJECT PRONOUNS                        | REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS |
|--|--------------------|
| me                                     | myself             |
| you                                    | yourself           |
| This is the plural form of “yourself.” |                    |
| you                                    | yourselves         |
| her                                    | herself            |
| him                                    | himself            |
| it                                     | itself             |
| us                                     | ourselves          |
| them                                   | themselves         |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I left **myself** a reminder about the meeting.



You must prepare **yourselves** for this exam.



**Sarah** sees **herself** as a natural team leader.



**He** introduced **himself** to the other guests.



The door locks **itself** when you close it.



We pride **ourselves** on our customer service.



They're teaching **themselves** to cook.





## 78.2 VERBS THAT CANNOT BE REFLEXIVE

Several verbs that are followed by reflexive pronouns in other languages are not normally followed by a reflexive pronoun in English.

The verb "relax" is not followed by a reflexive pronoun.

I'm really stressed. I can't **relax**. ✓



I'm really stressed. I can't relax **myself**. ✗

This is wrong.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I'll turn my music down if you can't **concentrate**.



He **shaves** every morning.



He was sick, but he's **feeling** better now.



She **goes to bed** at the same time every night.



Let's **meet** at the café at 2:30.



She **washes her hair** every evening.



I **get up** early every day.



I often **hurry** out of the house.

### COMMON MISTAKES REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A reflexive pronoun can only be used if the subject and object of the sentence are the same. If the object is different from the subject, an object pronoun should be used instead.

The subject of the sentence is "my boss," so it is correct to use an object pronoun.

My boss invited Joe and **me** to the meeting. ✓

My boss invited **myself** and Joe to the meeting. ✗

"I" is not the subject of the sentence, so it is wrong to use a reflexive pronoun.

### 78.3 USING REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS FOR EMPHASIS

Sometimes reflexive pronouns are not essential to the grammar of the sentence, but can be used to add emphasis in different ways.



The company director gave the talk.

This sentence makes sense without a reflexive pronoun.

Adding the reflexive pronoun at the end of the clause emphasizes that the action was not done by someone else.

The company director gave the talk **himself**.

[The company director gave the talk, rather than getting someone else to do it.]

Adding the reflexive pronoun directly after the subject emphasizes its importance.

The company director **himself** gave the talk.

[The company director, who is an important person, gave the talk.]

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



You don't have to do the dishes. I'll do them **myself**.



She's fixing her car **herself**. It's cheaper than taking it to the garage.



The meal **itself** wasn't very good, but it was a great evening.



The board members **themselves** will be at the meeting today.



I do my laundry **myself**, but my dad does my sister's for her.



I wanted us to build the furniture **ourselves**, but it's not going well.

## 78.4 REFLEXIVE COLLOCATIONS

Many collocations contain reflexive pronouns. They often follow the pattern verb plus reflexive pronoun plus preposition.



She still has to **familiarize herself with** company policy.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Are you leaving early today? **Enjoy yourself!**



The managers don't **concern themselves with** minor issues.



Remember to **behave yourselves** when you are in public.



Try to **tear yourself away from** the computer as often as possible.



He was **sitting by himself** in the café.

"By" is used with a reflexive pronoun to mean "alone."

Reflexive pronouns are often used in the imperative. Here, "yourself" implies that "you" is the subject.

#### TIP

Sometimes the subject is not included, but is implied by the reflexive pronoun.

## 78.5 "EACH OTHER"

When two or more people or things perform the same action to the other, "each other" is used instead of a reflexive pronoun.

Amy and Raj looked at **each other**.

[Amy looked at Raj and Raj looked at Amy.]



Amy and Raj looked at **themselves** in the mirror.

[Amy looked herself in the mirror and Raj looked at himself in the mirror.]



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

They gave **each other** presents.

My cats hate **each other!**

"One another" means the same as "each other."

The children are shouting at **one another**.

We're helping **each other** with our homework.



# 79 Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns, such as “anyone,” “someone,” and “everyone,” are used to refer to a person or object, or a group of people or objects, without explaining who or what they are.

See also:

Present simple 1

Forming questions 34

## 79.1 “ANYONE” AND “SOMEONE”

“Someone” and “somebody” refer to an unspecified person in a positive statement or question.

“Anyone” and “anybody” refer to an unspecified person in a question or negative statement.



Did **anyone** call me this morning?

Yes, **someone** called you at 11 o'clock.



Do you want to talk to **somebody**?

“Somebody” means the same as “someone,” but is more informal.

No, I don't want to talk to **anybody**.

“Anybody” means the same as “anyone,” but is more informal.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Is **someone** working late?



Can **somebody** carry my bag?



I gave **somebody** a flower.



**Someone** gave me a present.



I didn't give **anybody** your name.



Did **anyone** buy a gift for Mrs. Tan?



I don't know **anyone** in this town.



Did **anybody** here send me this letter?



## 79.2 "EVERYONE" AND "NO ONE"

"Everyone" refers to a whole group of people.

"No one" means no person in a group.

"No one" is written as two words.

Why is there **no one** in the office?



**Everyone** is at the big meeting.

The singular form of the verb is used with "everyone" and "everybody."



"Everybody" means the same as "everyone," but is less formal.



Where is **everybody**?

I don't know, there's **nobody** here.

The singular form of the verb is used with "nobody" and "no one."

"Nobody" means the same as "no one."



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Nobody** wants to come with me.



I'm at the park with **everyone** if you'd like to join us.



**Everybody** has some kind of special skill.



There was **nobody** but me at work until 10am.



### ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES "NO ONE" AND "ANYONE"

"No one" and "nobody" go in positive statements and questions.

"Anyone" and "anybody" go in negative statements and questions.

This is a negative statement, so "anyone" or "anybody" is used.

There **isn't anyone** here. ✓

There **isn't no one** here. ✗

This is a negative statement, so "no one" is incorrect.

### 79.3 "SOMETHING" AND "ANYTHING"

"Something" and "anything" refer to an unspecified or unnamed object or thing. "Something" can only be used in questions and positive statements, whereas "anything" can be used in negative statements as well as questions and positive statements.

Can I have **something** to eat?

Here "something" refers to a specific, unnamed thing that the speaker has in mind.

Yes, have **something** from the cupboard.

Here "something" has a more general meaning, as the speaker may not have a specific thing in mind.



Is there **anything** I can help with?

The singular form of the verb is used with "anything" and "something."

No, there isn't **anything** you can do.

This statement is negative, so "anything" is used, not "something."



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Have **anything** you want.

"Anything" used in positive statements shows the possibilities are unlimited.



**Anything** baked by my grandmother tastes delicious.



There's **something** I need to tell you.



We don't have **anything** in common.



**Something** that I've always enjoyed is kayaking with my friends.



I know I've forgotten **something**, but I can't think what it is.



I'd do **anything** to be able to sing like her.



**Something** spooky happened last night.





## 79.4 "NOTHING" AND "EVERYTHING"

"Nothing" means that there are no available objects or things.

Tim and James have **nothing** in common.

There is no single thing that Tim and James have in common.



"Everything" means all the possible objects or things are available.

Tim and Dan do **everything** together.



Where "nothing" is used in a positive statement, "anything" can be used in a negative statement with the same meaning.

There's **nothing** I want to buy here.

[There isn't anything I want to buy here.]

The verb is positive.

The verb is negative.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There's **nothing** I love more than a sunny day.



**Everything** is going well at the moment.



**Nothing** at the exhibition was any good.



I love that new Italian restaurant.  
**Everything** tastes so good!



I want to see **everything** at the museum.



I know absolutely **nothing** about Geography.



I do **everything** to the best of my ability.



**Nothing** interests me about politics.



# 80 Possession

Possessive determiners, possessive pronouns, apostrophe with "s," and the verbs "have" and "have got" are all used to express possession in English.

**See also:**

Forming questions **34** Verb patterns with objects **53** "This / that / these / those" **65**

## 80.1 POSSESSIVE DETERMINERS

Possessive determiners are used before a noun to show who it belongs to. They change form depending on whether the owner is singular, plural, male, or female.



Felix is **my** cat.

I own the cat.



Coco is **your** rabbit.

The rabbit belongs to you.



Buster is **her** dog.

The dog belongs to a woman.



Polly is **his** parrot.

The parrot belongs to a man.



Rachel is **our** daughter.

We are her parents.



John is **their** son.

They are his parents.

## HOW TO FORM

I



**my**



**my cat**



you



**your**



**your rabbit**



he



**his**



**his wife**



she



**her**



**her sister**



it



**its**



**its ball**



we



**our**



**our horse**



they



**their**



**their son**



## 80.2 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive pronouns can also be used to explain who owns something. Unlike possessive determiners, they replace the noun they are showing possession of.

The determiner comes before the noun.

This is **my** car.



These are **her** books.



This car is **mine**.



These books are **hers**.



The noun comes before the verb.

The possessive pronoun is used after the verb. It replaces "my car."

### HOW TO FORM

#### DETERMINERS

**my**

**your**

**his**

**her**

**its**

**our**

**their**

#### PRONOUNS

**mine**

**yours**

**his**

**hers**

**its**

**ours**

**theirs**

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

This is **their** suitcase.



That suitcase is **theirs**.



We're staying in **our** new villa.



The villa is **ours**.



The boy is playing with **his** toys.



All these toys are **his**.



I'll bring some food to **your** picnic.



The rest of the food is **yours**.





## 80.3 APOSTROPHE WITH "S"

An apostrophe and the letter "s" are added to the end of a singular noun to show that what comes after the noun belongs to it.

This form is correct in English, but it is not normally used.

the mother of Lizzie

Lizzie's mother

This is a common way of talking about belonging.

An apostrophe with an "s" shows ownership.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The "s" after the apostrophe is optional when the noun already ends in an "-s."

Tess' dog



Tia's rabbit



Dave's grandmother



If something belongs to more than one noun, "-s" is only added to the last one.

Juan and Beth's parrot



The baby's toy



The dog's ball



### COMMON MISTAKES APOSTROPHES

Apostrophes are often incorrectly added before the "s" when talking about years or decades.

I was born in the 1960s. ✓

The best decade was the 70s. ✓



I was born in the 1960's. ✗

The best decade was the 70's. ✗

This is neither possessive nor a contraction, so there is no need for an apostrophe.

## 80.4 APOSTROPHES AND PLURAL NOUNS

To show belonging with a plural noun that ends in “-s,” just an apostrophe with no “s” is added.

Ginger is my **parents’** cat.

Plural nouns that end with “-s” use an apostrophe with no extra “s.”



To show belonging with a plural noun that doesn't end in “-s,” an apostrophe and an “s” are added.

Polly is our **children’s** parrot.

This is formed in the same way as singular nouns, with an apostrophe and “s.”



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

My **friends’** dog is called Rex.



I’m looking after my **cousins’** rabbit.



That is his **grandparents’** house.



She cares about her **students’** grades.



These are the **men’s** rooms.



It depends on the **people’s** vote.



It is important not to confuse “its” with “it’s.” “Its” is a third person singular possessive determiner, and never has an apostrophe. “It’s” is only ever a contraction of “it is.”



The dog is playing with **its** ball. ✓

**It’s** a shiny, red ball. ✓

This is a possessive so needs no apostrophe.

The dog is playing with **it’s** ball. ✗

**Its** a shiny, red ball. ✗

This is a contraction of “it is,” so should have an apostrophe before the “s.”

## 80.5 "HAVE"

The verb "have" can be used to talk about what people own.

**I have** a large garage.



"Has" is used for the third person singular (he, she, or it).

**She has** a yard.



## HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT                | "HAVE" | OBJECT          |
|------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| I<br>You<br>We<br>They | have   | a large garage. |
| He<br>She<br>It        | has    |                 |

These subject pronouns take "have."

These subject pronouns take "has."

## 80.6 "HAVE" NEGATIVES

Although "have" is irregular, its negative is formed in the usual way. The negative form can also be contracted as with other verbs.



**I have** a bathtub.

I { do not  
don't } have a bathtub.

"Do not" can be shortened to "don't."

"Does not" is used instead of "do not" for she, he, and it.

**Jim has** a bathtub.

Jim { does not  
doesn't } have a bathtub.

"Does not" can be shortened to "doesn't."

"Have" is always used instead of "has" in the negative.



## 80.7 "HAVE" AND "HAVE GOT"

"Have got" is another way to say "has" when talking about possession. "Have" is appropriate in all situations, but "have got" is only used in spoken UK English.

**I have** a new phone.

"I've" cannot be used in this context.



**I've got** a new phone.

"I have" can become "I've" when used with "got."

"Got" doesn't change when the subject changes.

**I don't have** a dishwasher.



**I haven't got** a dishwasher.

"Have not" can become "haven't" when used with "got."

**Do you have** your keys?

The subject sits between "do" and "have" in questions.



**Have you got** your keys?

The subject sits between "have" and "got" in questions.

## 80.8 ANSWERING "HAVE" QUESTIONS

Short answers to "have" questions can be given using "do" and "don't."



**Do you have** a microwave?

"Do" is added to form a question.

"Do" goes in the positive answer.

**Yes, I do.**

**No, I don't.**

"Do not" or "don't" go in the negative answer.

Questions and answers using "have got" are formed differently. "Have got" is mostly heard in UK English.



**Have you got** a microwave?

"Have" or "has" moves to the start of the question.

"Got" does not move.

"Have" goes in the positive answer.

**Yes, I have.**

**No, I haven't.**

"Have not" or "haven't" go in the negative answer.

# 81 Defining relative clauses

A relative clause is a part of a sentence that gives more information about the subject. A defining, or restrictive, relative clause identifies the subject being talked about.

See also:

Non-defining relative clauses **82**

Other relative structures **83**

## 81.1 DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

Defining relative clauses, also known as restrictive relative clauses, are used to describe exactly which person or thing the speaker is referring to. Without this information, the meaning of the sentence changes.

Here the defining clause gives essential information about people.



Here the defining clause gives essential information about a thing.



The defining clause can also go in the middle of the main clause.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I need a television **that works!**



Do you know anyone **who knows how to fix a bike?**



He's the actor **that we saw last week.**

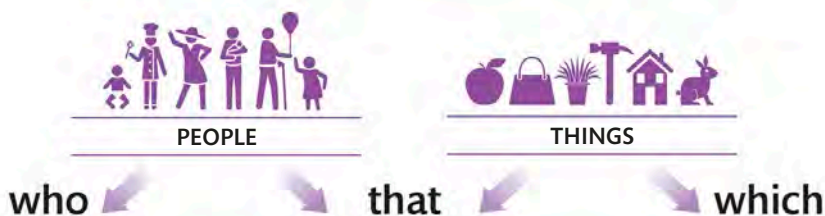


The book **that I just read** is excellent.



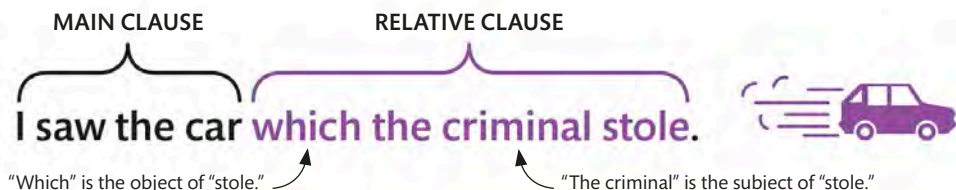
## 81.2 RELATIVE PRONOUNS

English uses different relative pronouns to talk about people and things.



## 81.3 SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS IN DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

Relative clauses are made up of a subject, a verb, and usually an object. They usually start with a relative pronoun, which can be the subject or the object of the relative clause.

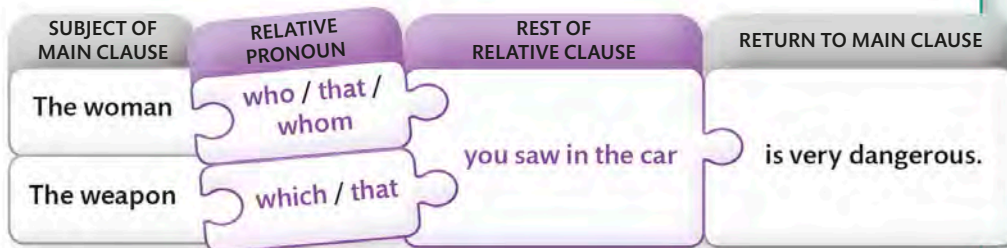


## HOW TO FORM

If the relative pronoun is the subject of the relative clause, it must appear in the sentence.



If the relative pronoun is the object of the relative clause, it can be left out. “Whom” is sometimes used when a person is the object, but this is very formal.





# 82 Non-defining relative clauses

Like defining relative clauses, non-defining relative clauses add extra information about something. However, this simply gives extra detail, rather than changing the sentence's meaning.

See also:

Quantity 75

Defining relative clauses 81

## 82.1 NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

In non-defining relative clauses, also known as non-restrictive relative clauses, "who" is used to refer to people. "Whom" can be used if the person is the object of the relative clause, but this is very formal.

MAIN CLAUSE                      NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSE

We spoke to Linda, **who had recently been mugged.**

"Who" refers to a person.



"Which" is used to refer to anything that is not a person. "That" is sometimes used instead of "which," but this is often considered wrong in non-defining relative clauses.

MAIN CLAUSE                      NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSE                      RETURN TO MAIN CLAUSE

Her necklace, **which she'd just bought,** was stolen.

"Which" refers to a thing.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Jay, **who I used to live with,** came to stay with us for a few days.



The suspect, **whom we had been following,** was arrested.



"Whom" is only used in very formal situations.

All the burglars were arrested, **which was a great relief.**



The relative pronoun can refer to the entire previous clause.

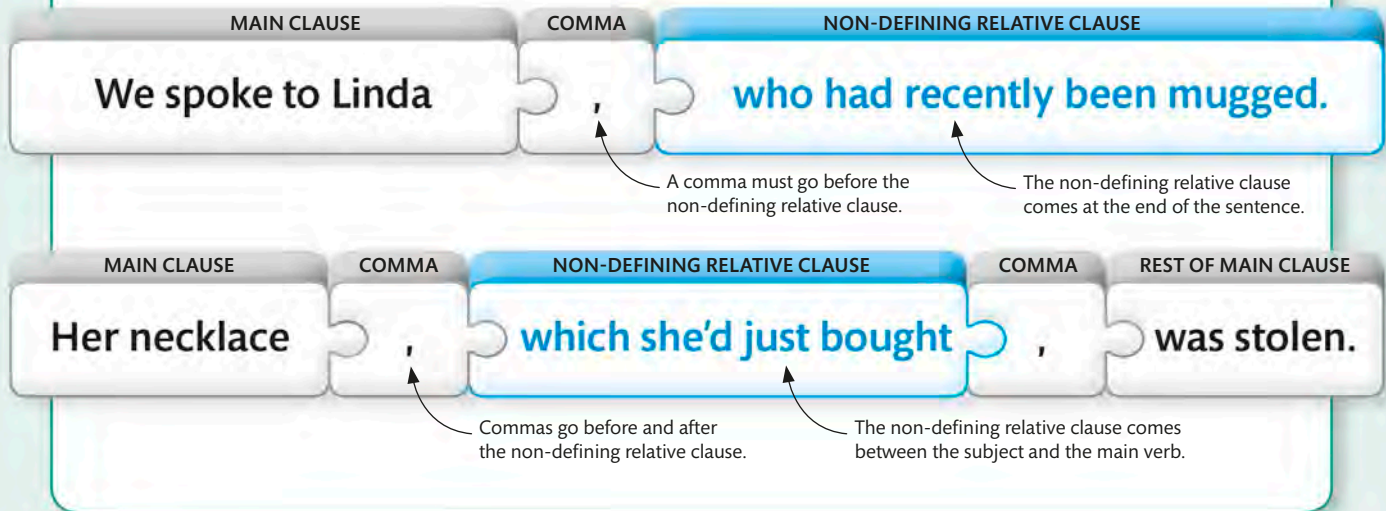
Our new house, **which is by the beach,** is beautiful.



## HOW TO FORM

Non-defining relative clauses can come in the middle of a sentence, or at the end.

If the relative clause comes in the middle, commas must go either side of it. If it comes after the whole main clause, a comma must go at the end of the main clause.



## 82.2 QUANTIFIERS WITH NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

In non-defining relative clauses, quantifiers can be used to say how many people or things the relative clause refers to. In these structures, "who" becomes "of whom," and "which" becomes "of which."

QUANTIFIER + OF + WHOM

I teach many students, **all of whom** are very talented.



QUANTIFIER + OF + WHICH

I teach many classes, **some of which** are very difficult.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

My brother and sister, **both of whom** live in Ireland, are coming to visit.



Lots of people, **many of whom** are famous, will be at the event.



I have four essays due next week, **none of which** are ready.



Tommy has three pets, **two of which** are cats.



# 83 Other relative structures

Relative words introduce phrases that describe a noun in the main part of the sentence. Different relative words are used to refer to different types of nouns.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

Possession 80

## 83.1 "WHERE," "WHEN," AND "WHEREBY"

"Where" is the relative word used to refer to a place.

That is the place **where** the judge sits.

[The judge sits there.]



"When" is the relative word used to refer to a time.

He is looking forward to the day **when** he'll be released from prison.

[He's looking forward to the day of his release.]



"Whereby" is the relative word used to refer to a process.

A trial is the process **whereby** a person is found guilty or innocent of a crime.

[To be found guilty, you must go through a trial process.]



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

This is the house **where** Shakespeare was born.



Dean is out at the moment. I'm not sure **where** he is.



I remember the day **when** you were born.



Next month is **when** the new students are starting.



They have an agreement **whereby** they share the company's profits.



There's a new system **whereby** students submit their work online.





### 83.2 "WHOSE"

"Whose" is the relative word used to show possession or belonging.

This is the lawyer **whose** client lied in court.

[This lawyer's client lied in court.]



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The UK is an example of a country **whose** traffic laws are very strict.



Smith & Smith, **whose** success rate is very high, is a respected law firm.



### 83.3 "WHAT"

"What" is the relative word used to mean "the thing which" or "the things which."

This house is just **what** we were looking for.

[This house is the thing which we were looking for.]



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I don't know **what** it is, but I'm excited to open it!



These paintings are **what** I've been spending all my time on.



### ⚠ COMMON MISTAKES WORD ORDER WITH RELATIVE STRUCTURES

If a relative structure uses a question word such as "where" or "what," the word order in the clause following this word should be left as normal and should not be formed like a question.

This is just **what we were** looking for. ✓

This is correct.

This is just **what were we** looking for. ✗

Do not invert the subject and verb.

# 84 Question words with “-ever”

Adding “-ever” to question words changes their meaning. These words can be adverbs or determiners in their own clauses, or they can join two clauses together.

See also:

Articles **63** Singular and plural nouns **69**

Adverbs of manner **98**

## 84.1 QUESTION WORDS WITH “-EVER”

Words ending “-ever” are most commonly used to mean “it doesn’t matter what,” “I don’t know,” or to say that the options are unrestricted. They can be used as subjects and objects.



I’m still going to the game, **whatever** the weather’s like.

[It doesn’t matter what the weather is like. I’m still going.]



We can take a taxi or walk, **whichever** you prefer.

[It doesn’t matter to me which you choose, taxi or walking.]

Here, “whichever” is an object.



**Whoever** invented the umbrella was a very clever person.

[I don’t know who invented the umbrella, but they were very clever.]

Here, “whoever” is a subject.



We’ll reschedule for **whenever** the sun comes out next.

[I don’t know when it will be, but we’ll reschedule for the next time it’s sunny.]



I always check the forecast for **wherever** I’m going to be.

[I check the forecast for the place I am going to be, no matter where it is.]



I’m sure you’ll arrive on time, **however** you decide to travel.

[No matter which mode of transportation you choose, I’m sure you’ll be on time.]

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Whatever** he tells you,  
just ignore it.



Feel free to call in to see us  
**whenever** you're in town.



**Whichever** you choose, you'll  
have to spend a lot of money.



**Wherever** we end up going this  
summer, I know it'll be great.



**Whoever** did this painting  
is a very talented artist.



**However** he managed to break it,  
I'm not sure we'll be able to fix it.



### 84.2 "WHICHEVER" AND "WHATEVER" AS DETERMINERS

"Whichever" and "whatever" can come before nouns to show that the options are unspecified.



I'm sure you'll love **whichever** dog you choose.

[It doesn't matter which dog you choose, you'll love it.]



If you need help for **whatever** reason, just let me know.

[It doesn't matter what the reason is, let me know if you need help.]

### 84.3 OTHER USES OF "WHENEVER" AND "HOWEVER"

"Whenever" can also mean "every time that."



It always seems to rain **whenever** I go away.

[Any time I go away, it rains.]

"However" is often used before an adjective,  
as an adverb, to mean "to whatever extent."



If there's a chance of rain, **however** small, I'll take an umbrella.

[I'll take an umbrella, no matter how small the risk of rain.]



# 85 "There"

"There" can be used with a form of "be" to talk about the existence or presence of a person or thing. Sentences with "there" can be used in many different tenses.

## See also:

Present perfect simple **11** Future with "going to" **17**

Future with "will" **18** Singular and plural nouns **69**

## 85.1 "THERE" IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

"There is" is used to talk about singular or uncountable nouns, and "there are" is used to talk about plural nouns.

**There is** a hospital in my town.



**There are** three hospitals in my town.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**There is** a market every Saturday.

**There are** several schools and colleges.

**There is** always traffic in the city.

Uncountable noun.

**There are** some restaurants and bars.

## HOW TO FORM



## 85.2 "THERE" IN THE PAST SIMPLE

In the past simple, "there was" is used to talk about singular or uncountable nouns, and "there were" is used to talk about plural nouns.



**There was** a party here last night.

**There were** 150 people at the party!

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**There was** singing and dancing.



**There was** a clown to entertain the children.



**There was** a huge mess to clean afterwards.



**There were** balloons and streamers.



**There were** speeches after the meal.



**There were** waiters to refill the guests' drinks.



### HOW TO FORM



### 85.3 "THERE" IN THE PRESENT PERFECT

In the present perfect, "there has been" is used to talk about singular or uncountable nouns, and "there have been" is used to talk about plural nouns.

**There has been** a decrease in client satisfaction.



**There have been** lots of complaints recently.



↑ "Been" doesn't change form.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**There has been** increased pressure on employees.



**There has been** a steady rise in unemployment.



**There has been** a decrease in petty crime.



**There has been** success in hiring graduates.



**There have been** many new jobs advertised.



**There have been** some thefts in the office.



**There have been** more training days for staff.



**There have been** big bonuses this year.



#### HOW TO FORM

"THERE"

"HAS BEEN"

SINGULAR NOUN

REST OF SENTENCE

**There**

**has been**

**a decrease**

**in client satisfaction.**

"THERE"

"HAVE BEEN"

PLURAL NOUN

REST OF SENTENCE

**There**

**have been**

**lots of complaints**

**recently.**



## 85.4 "THERE" IN THE FUTURE

In the future with "will," "there will be" is used to talk about both singular and plural nouns.

**There will be** a fire drill on Monday.

**There will be** fire wardens around to help.



In the future with "going to," "there is going to be" is used to talk about singular nouns, and "there are going to be" is used to talk about plural nouns.

**There is going to be** a big announcement.

**There are going to be** big changes!



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

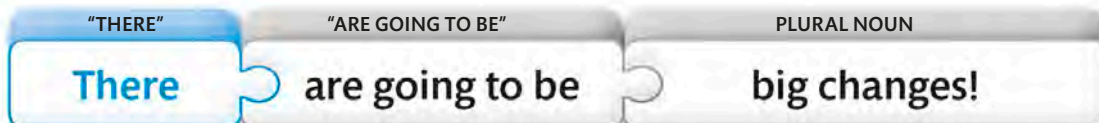
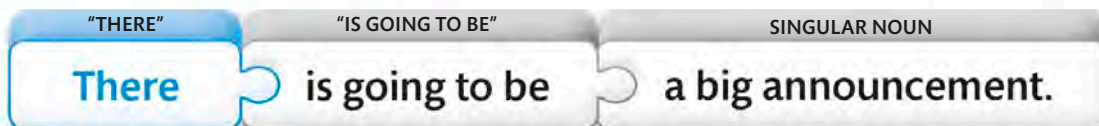
**There will be** a train strike next week.

**There is going to be** a meeting at the office.

**There will be** replacement bus services.

**There are going to be** severe delays.

### HOW TO FORM



# 86 Introductory "it"

"It" is often used when a sentence has no clear subject, and is sometimes known as a dummy subject or empty subject.

**See also:**

Defining relative clauses **81**

Non-defining relative clauses **82**

## 86.1 "IT" AS A DUMMY SUBJECT

"It" is used to talk about the time, dates, distance, or the weather. In these sentences, "it" doesn't have a specific meaning, but it serves as the grammatical subject of the sentence.

"It" can be used to talk about the time.

What time is **it**?

**It's** 3 o'clock.



"It" can be used to talk about distances.

How far is **it** to the beach?

**It's** 1 mile that way.



"It" can be used to talk about the day, date, month, or year.

What day is **it**?

**It's** Tuesday.



"It" can be used to talk about the weather.

What's the weather like today?

**It's** cloudy and raining.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**It's** 2 o'clock in the morning.  
Please stop singing!



I'm going to walk to work.  
**It's** only two miles away.



**It's** the 21st century. I can't believe you still use that phone.



I'm surprised that **it's** so sunny in the middle of January.



## 86.2 INTRODUCTORY "IT"

Certain set phrases beginning "it is" can be used at the start of a sentence. "It" is the subject of the sentence, and can be used to express a general truth or belief.



"IT" CLAUSE

INFINITIVE CLAUSE

**It is easy** **to** make mistakes in a new language.

Some "it" clauses are followed by a "to" infinitive.

"IT" CLAUSE

"THAT" CLAUSE

**It is a shame** **that** so many people give up.

Some "it" clauses are followed by "that" clauses.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES INTRODUCTORY "IT"



**It is important** **to** be relaxed about making mistakes.



**It's unlikely** **that** you will be comfortable speaking aloud at first.



**It is essential** **to** give yourself time to study regularly.



**It's true** **that** being able to speak a second language is useful.



**It is difficult** **to** remember facts if you don't write them down.



**It is often said** **that** going to the country of the language helps.



# 87 Shifting focus

"It" clauses, "what" clauses, or moving a noun to the front of a sentence can all be used to put emphasis on a certain word or phrase.

## See also:

Types of verbs **49** Defining relative clauses **81**

Non-defining relative clauses **82**

## 87.1 FOCUSING WITH "IT" CLAUSES

Part of a sentence can be emphasized by adding "it is" or "it was" before it, and "that" after it. This can correct a misunderstanding or emphasize something unexpected.

You've met my friend John before, haven't you?



This stresses that it wasn't John who I met before.

"That" is added before the main verb.

No, **it was** your friend Michael **that** I met.

"It is" or "it was" is added before the noun phrase to be focused.

"Your friend Michael" is now the focus of the sentence.

The main verb moves to the end.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The second clause is a relative clause. It is most commonly introduced by "that," "which," or "who." "When" and "where" can also be used, but they're less formal.

**It is the engine that** I need to replace.



**It was summertime when** Zoe last saw her cousins.



**It was the doctor who** I needed to call.



**It was in a bar where** Olly first met his wife.



**It was the cold weather which** made me sick.



**It was the price which** changed my mind.



**It was my colleague who** prepared the food.



**It was the toaster that** set off the fire alarm.



## 87.2 FOCUSING WITH "WHAT" CLAUSES

Simple statements can be made more emphatic by adding "what" with the verb "be." This structure is often used with verbs expressing emotions, such as "love," "hate," "like," and "want."

Would you like to go to a movie?



No, thanks. **What** I really want **is to go to bed early.**

"What" is added to the start of the sentence.

The focused information is put outside the "what" clause.

This has more emphasis than "I really want to go to bed early."

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**What** we hated **was** the bad service.

**What** I like here **is** the weather.

**What** they loved the most **were** the museums.

**What** she enjoys the most **is** the music.

## 87.3 FOCUSING WITH A NOUN

If the subject of the sentence cannot be replaced with "what" (for example, people, places, or times) a general noun that has a similar meaning can be used.



I've been to many countries.

**The place** I most enjoyed visiting **was** Nepal.



I've read about some great people.

**The woman** I respect the most **is** Marie Curie.



I don't know why the show was canceled.

**The reason** they gave **was** not good enough.



I have lots of fun memories.

**The evening** I remember most **is** my first concert.

# 88 Inversion

Reversing the normal order of words, or inversion, can be used for emphasis or a sense of drama. It is common after certain types of adverbials.

See also:

Present simple 1 Types of verbs 49

Adverbs of frequency 102

## 88.1 INVERSION AFTER NEGATIVE ADVERBIALS

In more formal or literary texts, inversion of a verb and its subject is used for emphasis after negative adverbial phrases like “not only,” “not since,” and “only when.”



In this simple sentence, the subject comes before the verb.

**She is** a famous singer. She is also a very good actor.

**Not only is she** a famous singer, **but** she's **also** a very good actor.

After the negative adverbial, the subject and the verb swap places.

“But” is optional.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The auxiliary and subject swap places.

**Not since** my childhood **have I** enjoyed a performance so much.

**Not until** the performance was over **did he** look up at the audience.

Where there is no auxiliary verb, “do” is used.

**Only if** it stops raining **will the race** go ahead this afternoon.

**Only when** he emerged from the car **did the fans** start cheering.

**Only after** the race **did he** realize what he had achieved.

**Little did they** know how lucky they are to be successful.

**Little did they** realize how difficult fame would be.





## 88.2 INVERSION AFTER TIME ADVERBIALS

Inversion can be used after time adverbials that are negative or restrictive, such as “no sooner” and “never before.” This emphasizes the time at which something happens, or happened.

In this simple sentence, the subject comes before the verb.

**Tina** **had** just released an album when she starred in her first movie.



The subject (“Tina”) and the auxiliary verb (“had”) swap places.  
**No sooner** **had Tina** released an album **than** she starred in her first movie.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Hardly** **had she** stepped out of the car **when** fans surrounded her.



**Rarely** **do you** meet a celebrity with such talent and style.



**Never before** **had a song** reached the top of the charts so quickly.



**Only sometimes** **does it** not snow during the ski season.



## 88.3 INVERSION AFTER “SO” AND “NEITHER”

In order to agree with a positive statement, “be” and its subject, or an auxiliary and its subject can be inverted after “so.” For a negative statement, the same is done after “neither.” For a sentence that doesn’t have an auxiliary, “do” is used when it is inverted.

I’ve never been to China.

**Neither** **have I.**



I need to get some new clothes.

**So do I.**



When there is no auxiliary verb, “do” is used.

I’m excited for the party tonight.

**So am I!**



# 89 Ellipsis

Some words can be left out of a sentence to avoid repetition, or when the meaning can be understood without them. This is called ellipsis.

See also:

Question words 35

Coordinating conjunctions 110

## 89.1 ELLIPSIS AFTER CONJUNCTIONS

When two phrases are joined by “and,” “but,” or “or” it is common to leave out repeated words of various kinds.

He bought tickets, **but** [he] didn't go.

Often a repeated subject is dropped after “and,” “but,” or “or.”



She loved the original **and** [she loved] the sequel.

If the meaning remains clear, a repeated subject and verb can be dropped.



I'm happy to go out **or** [I'm happy to] stay home.

If the meaning is clear, words that have already been mentioned and do not require repetition can be omitted.



### TIP

Ellipsis is not normally possible after conjunctions other than “and,” “but,” and “or.”

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

She said she'd call, **but** she didn't [call].



I hope my camera works, **but** I don't think it will [work].



You can watch the documentary **or** [you can watch] the cartoon.



Please may I have a knife **and** [a] fork?



I'd love to be a boxer, **but** I'm not strong enough [to be a boxer].



I can't decide if I want a burger **or** [I want] a hotdog.



## 89.2 CONVERSATIONAL ELLIPSIS

Words can also be left out of sentences if the meaning can be understood from the context. This kind of ellipsis does not have strict rules, and is very common in informal everyday speech, particularly when giving replies.

What time does the movie start?



**Eight.**

[It starts at eight o'clock.]

What kind of popcorn would you like?



**Salted, please.**

[I would like salted popcorn, please.]

What did you think of the film?



**Complete nonsense.**

[I thought the film was complete nonsense.]

## 89.3 QUESTION WORD CLAUSES

Clauses can be dropped after question words such as "who," "what," "where," and "how."

Somebody stole my watch, but I don't know **who** [stole it].



I want to buy my dad a present, but I'm not sure **what** [to buy him].



I want to go away, but I can't decide **where** [to go].



I need to fix my car, and I'm fairly certain I know **how** [to fix it].





# 90 Shortening infinitives

Phrases with infinitives can sometimes be reduced or shortened to prevent repetition. This helps language to sound more natural.

See also:  
Infinitives and participles 51

## 90.1 REDUCED INFINITIVES

Instead of repeating the whole infinitive clause, "to" can be used on its own if the meaning remains clear.

Let's see that new DJ tonight.



I don't really want **to** [see the new DJ].

If the previous sentence or clause contains the verb "be," then the full infinitive "to be" must be used, rather than just "to."

She **was** really critical of the new album.



It's difficult not **to be** [critical of it].  
The singing is awful!

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



He asked me if I wanted to cook tonight, but I'd prefer not **to**.



All my friends are going to the basketball game, but I don't want **to**.



I was going to bring an umbrella, but I decided not **to**.



There **are** more flowers in the garden than there used **to be**.



This packaging **isn't** recyclable, but it ought **to be**.

## 90.2 DROPPING THE ENTIRE INFINITIVE CLAUSE

The entire infinitive clause can be dropped, or “to” can be kept on its own after some verbs, such as “agree,” “ask,” “forget,” “promise,” “start,” and “try.”



Chris is going to come to the show. He { **promised** [to come].  
**promised to** [come].

The same structure can also be used after some nouns, such as: “chance,” “plans,” “promise,” “idea,” and “opportunity.”

I haven't seen this band before. I'd love the { **chance** [to see them].  
**chance to** [see them].

The same structure can also be used after certain adjectives, such as “delighted,” “afraid,” “willing,” and “determined.”

I want to perform on stage, but I'm { **afraid** [to perform on stage].  
**afraid to** [perform on stage].

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

We need to leave soon, but I'm not **ready**.



They told me I could join the team if I **wanted to**.



I would travel the world if I had the **money**.



I'm going to pass my driving test. I'm **determined to**.



I want to go out, but I haven't got any **plans**.



Remind me to lock the door, or I'll **forget to**.



I would never do a bungee jump. I don't have the **courage**.



Thanks for asking me to come to your wedding. I'd **love to**.



### 90.3 VERBS WITH COMPLEMENTS

The entire infinitive clause cannot be left out after verbs that have complement clauses (phrases that complete their meaning), such as: "advise," "afford," "be able," "choose," "decide," "expect," "hate," "hope," "love," "need," and "prefer." "To" must be used after these.

**We want to see a band tonight,  
but we really can't afford to.**



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**I tried to get to the front of the crowd, but I wasn't able to.**



**I had piano lessons as a child, but I didn't choose to.**



**You could bring some snacks along, but you don't need to.**



**I have never been to the opera, but I would love to.**



### 90.4 "WANT" AND "WOULD LIKE"

The "to" of the infinitive clause is not usually dropped after "want" or "would like."

**He asked if I wanted to go,  
and I said I would like to.**



In "if" clauses, however, "to" can be used on its own or the whole infinitive can be dropped after "want" or "would like."

**You can come with us if you { want.  
want to.**

The "to" cannot be dropped in a negative clause.

**Don't go to the concert if you don't want to.**

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**We could play golf this weekend, if you want.**



**I asked my friends to play, but they didn't want to.**





## 90.5 SHORTENING INFINITIVES

Sometimes "to" can be used instead of repeating the whole infinitive.

Do you go to Spain every year?



We **used to**.

[We used to go to Spain every year.]

After nouns and adjectives, sometimes the whole infinitive can be left out.

Are you ready to leave?



No, I'm **not ready** yet.

[I'm not ready to leave yet.]

However the verbs "be" and "have" are not usually omitted when they are used for possession.

She isn't paid much, but she **ought to be**.

"She ought to" is wrong. →

[She ought to be paid more.]



It's also not usually possible to leave out "to" after "like," "love," "hate," "prefer," "want," and "choose."

Do you want to go to the festival?



I'd **like to**.

→ "I'd like" is wrong.

Do you want to cook tonight?



I'd **prefer not to**.

→ "I'd prefer not" is unlikely.

# 91 Substitution

As well as ellipsis (leaving words out), repetition can be avoided by replacing some phrases with shorter ones. This is called substitution.

See also:

Countable and uncountable nouns 70

The past simple 7

## 91.1 SUBSTITUTING WITH "ONE / ONES" AND "SOME"

"One" and "ones" can be used to replace singular and plural countable nouns.

"Ones" can only be used to refer to a specific group of things. "Some" is used when the group is not defined, and to replace uncountable nouns.

### SINGLE COUNTABLE NOUNS

Does anyone have a copy of the book?



Yes, I have **one**.

"One" replaces  
"a copy of the book."

### PLURAL COUNTABLE NOUNS

Are there any bookstores near here?



Yes, there are **some** on Main Street.

There are **a few great ones** across town.

"Ones" can only be used if  
modified to define the specific  
things that are meant.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I got a raise at work, even though I didn't ask for **one**.



I knitted **some** scarves and sold **a few**.



"A few" can be used instead of "some."

Those new computers look great. I want **one** for my birthday.



I went shopping for dresses and found **some lovely ones**.



I need a new phone, but I don't know where would be the best place to buy **one**.



I saw there were new pastries at the bakery, so I thought I'd try **some**.



## 91.2 SUBSTITUTING WITH "DO"

Verbs and their complements can also be used with substitute words to avoid repetition. "Do" and "did" are often used to replace present and past simple tense verbs, for example.

There's water everywhere.  
Should I call a plumber?



Oh no! Yes, **do**.

"Do" prevents repetition of 'call a plumber'

I **think** this homework is really difficult.

I **did** too, so I asked for help.

Different forms of "do" replace "think."



I **don't**. It's easy.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I need to brush my teeth more.



Yes, it's important that you **do**.

I thought the exam was really easy.



I **didn't**. I really struggled.

## 91.3 SUBSTITUTING WITH "SO" AND "NOT"

In positive clauses after verbs of thinking, "so" can be used to avoid repetition. "Not" or "not... so" are used in negative sentences.

Will she be signing copies of her book?

I **hope so**!



No, I **don't think so**.

I'm **afraid not**.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES SUBSTITUTING NEGATIVES WITH "NOT... SO" AND "NOT"

It **appears not**.

It **doesn't seem so**.

"Not" or "not... so" are used with "appear," "seem," and "suppose."



I **don't imagine so**.

"Not... so" is used with "think," "believe," "expect," and "imagine."

I **hope not**.

"Not" is used with "hope," "assume," and "be afraid" (when "afraid" means "sorry").



# 92 Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. In English, they usually come before the noun that they are describing. There are several categories of adjective.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

## 92.1 USING ADJECTIVES

Adjectives in English are usually placed before the noun they describe. They do not change form to agree with the noun.

He is a **busy** man.



She is a **busy** woman.



Adjectives are the same for nouns that describe males or females.

It is a **busy** town.



These are **busy** streets.



Adjectives are the same for singular and plural nouns.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



This is a **red** shirt.

These are **tall** buildings.



It's a **cold** day.

She does **great** concerts.



## 92.2 OTHER WAYS TO USE ADJECTIVES

Sometimes, adjectives can be put after a verb such as "be" or "become."

The adjective can go at the end of the sentence after the verb "be."

The town is **busy**.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



That house is **beautiful**.



He is **annoyed**.

The noun can be replaced with a pronoun.



The cake is **delicious**.



She is very **tired**.



Natalie's dress is **long**.

### 92.3 TYPES OF FACT ADJECTIVES

Fact adjectives tell you a particular fact about the noun they are describing. There are many different categories of fact adjectives.

Size

The children saw an **enormous** dog. 

Shape

It's a **round** ball. 

Age

My great-grandmother is very **old**. 

Color

Nicole just loves her **red** hat. 

Nationality

I love eating **French** pastries. 

Material

I've bought some **leather** shoes. 


### 92.4 TYPES OF OPINION ADJECTIVES

Opinion adjectives describe what somebody thinks about something.

General opinion adjectives can describe lots of different things.

Specific opinion adjectives can only usually describe a certain type of thing.

General opinion

I just bought a very **nice** guitar. 

"Nice" is a general opinion adjective. It can describe lots of different things.






Specific opinion

Sylvester is such a **friendly** cat! 

"Friendly" is a specific opinion adjective. It usually only describes people or animals.

## 92.5 ADJECTIVE ORDER

When several adjectives are used together before a noun, they must go in a particular order. Opinion adjectives come before fact adjectives. General opinion adjectives always come before specific opinion adjectives, and the order of fact adjectives in a sentence depends on the type of fact that they describe.

|                    |  GENERAL OPINION |  SPECIFIC OPINION |  SIZE |  SHAPE |  AGE |
|--------------------|---|--|--|---|---|
| Brie is a          |   | delicious  |  | round   |   |
| He's a             | nice  | intelligent  |  |   | young   |
| I love your        |   |  |  |   | new   |
| That's a           | lovely  |  | little   |   |   |
| OPINION ADJECTIVES |   |  | FACT ADJECTIVES  |   |   |

## 92.6 ADJECTIVES WITH “-ING” AND “-ED”

### “-ING” ADJECTIVES

Adjectives that end in “-ing” describe the effect something has.

**The spider is frightening.**

The spider causes fright.

### “-ED” ADJECTIVES

Adjectives ending in “-ed” describe how something is affected.

**The man is frightened.**

The man experiences fright.





## TIP

English doesn't usually use more than three adjectives in a row to describe something.

|       | COLOR | NATIONALITY | MATERIAL |
|-------|-------|-------------|----------|
|       |       | French      |          |
|       |       |             |          |
| green |       |             |          |
|       |       |             | china    |

cheese.

Brie is a **delicious round French** cheese.



man.

He's a **nice, intelligent young** man.



dress.

I love your **new green** dress.



cup.

That's a **lovely little china** cup.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

The fireworks are **amazing**.  
She is **amazed**.



The wasp is **annoying**.  
He is **annoyed**.



The roller coaster was **thrilling**.  
They were **thrilled**.



The vacation is **relaxing**.  
He is **relaxed**.



I found the book too **confusing**.  
I was **confused** the whole time.



Your lecture was **interesting**.  
I was **interested** by your lecture.



The final scene was really **shocking**.  
Everyone was really **shocked**.



That film was very **boring**.  
I was very **bored**.



# Gradable and non-gradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives can be made weaker or stronger by adverbs, whereas non-gradable adjectives describe absolute qualities that cannot usually be graded.

See also:

Adjectives 92

Adverbs of degree 100

## 93.1 GRADABLE ADJECTIVES

Gradable adjectives can be modified by adverbs to make the adjective's original meaning more or less powerful.

Adverbs change the strength of the adjective.

Things can be more or less "good," so it is a gradable adjective.

This book is **very** good!



This book is **fairly** good.



This book is **not very** good.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Edmund is **extremely** talented.



Edmund is **reasonably** talented.



Edmund is **not particularly** talented.



This soup is **really** tasty!



This soup is **pretty** tasty.



This soup is **not very** tasty at all.

## 93.2 NON-GRADABLE ADJECTIVES

Non-gradable adjectives cannot usually be modified. These adjectives tend to fall into three categories: extreme, absolute, and classifying.



Non-gradable adjectives like "fantastic" cannot be modified by adverbs.

Her arguments were **fantastic**!

### EXTREME ADJECTIVES

Extreme adjectives are stronger versions of gradable adjectives, such as "awful," "hilarious," "fantastic," or "terrifying."

The idea of "extremely" is the meaning of "awful" already.

Her presentation was **awful**.

### ABSOLUTE ADJECTIVES

Absolute adjectives cannot be graded because they describe fixed qualities or states, such as "unique," "perfect," or "impossible."

It is not possible for something to be more or less unique.

She has a **unique** presenting style.

### CLASSIFYING ADJECTIVES

Classifying adjectives are used to say that something is of a specific type or class, such as "American," "nuclear," or "medical."

The audience was **American**.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

It's **boiling** in here. Can we open a window?



I am **certain** that he is the right person for the job.



I'm **terrified** of spiders and snakes!



Let's go for a walk. The weather outside is **perfect**.





# 94 Comparative adjectives

Comparative adjectives are used to compare two things. They can either be formed by adding the suffix “-er,” or by putting “more” or “less” before the adjective.

See also:

Singular and plural nouns 69

Adjectives 92

## 94.1 COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

For most adjectives with one or two syllables, “-er” is added to make the comparative.

Ahmed is **tall**.  
Ahmed is **taller** **than** Jonathan.

“-er” is added to make the comparative.

“Than” is used to introduce the thing that the subject is being compared to.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Dean is **stronger** **than** Carlos.

A plane is **faster** **than** a train.



5°F is **colder** **than** 85°F.

Sanjay is **younger** **than** Tina.



Emma is **older** **than** Sharon.

My friends are **quicker** **than** me.



## ! COMMON MISTAKES “THAN” WITH COMPARATIVES

“Then” and “than” can easily be confused because they sound similar, but it is never correct to use “then” to form a comparative.

Ahmed is **taller** **than** Jonathan. ✓

The correct word to use in comparatives is “than.”

Ahmed is taller **then** Jonathan. ✗

“Then” sounds similar to “than,” but it is not correct to use “then” after a comparative.

## 94.2 FORMING COMPARATIVES

There are different rules for forming comparatives depending on the ending of the simple form of the adjective.

ADJECTIVE

close

early

big

COMPARATIVE

closer

earlier

bigger

If the adjective ends in  
"-e," just an "-r" is added.

For some adjectives ending  
in "-y," the "-y" is removed  
and "-ier" added.

For single-syllable adjectives  
ending consonant-vowel-  
consonant, the final letter is  
doubled and "-er" added.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



An elephant is **larger**  
**than** a rhino.



My bedroom is **tidier**  
**than** my sister's.



Spain is **hotter**  
**than** England.

## 94.3 IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES

Some common adjectives have irregular comparatives.

ADJECTIVE

good

bad

far

COMPARATIVE

better

worse

farther (US)  
further (UK)

### TIP

In US English,  
"further" and "furthest"  
are used to describe  
figurative (not physical)  
distances.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



The house is **farther**  
**away than** the tree.



Jill got a **better**  
**grade than** John.



London has **worse**  
**weather than** Paris.

## 94.4 COMPARATIVES WITH LONG ADJECTIVES

For some two-syllable adjectives and adjectives with three syllables or more, "more" and "than" are used to make the comparative.



This beach is **more beautiful** **than** that one.

The adjective "beautiful" has three syllables, so "beautifuller" is not correct.

"More" can be replaced by "less" to give the opposite meaning.



This beach is **less beautiful** **than** that one.

### HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT + VERB

"MORE / LESS"

ADJECTIVE

"THAN"

REST OF SENTENCE

This beach is

more

less

beautiful

than

that one.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Spiders are **more frightening** **than** wasps.



For me, history is **less difficult** **than** science.



This book is **more interesting** **than** that one.



Walking is **less tiring** **than** running.



This dress is **more glamorous** **than** I expected.



My job is **less exciting** **than** I'd hoped.



## 94.5 TWO-FORM COMPARATIVES

Some two-syllable adjectives have two possible comparative forms. Either the comparative ending can be added, or "more" can be used before the adjective.



My cat is { **friendlier**  
**more friendly** } **than** my dog.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



The garage is { **narrower**  
**more narrow** } **than** the car.



The lake is { **shallower**  
**more shallow** } **than** the sea.



This puzzle is { **simpler**  
**more simple** } **than** that one.



My parrot is { **quieter**  
**more quiet** } **than** yours.



This party is { **livelier**  
**more lively** } **than** yours.



The driver is { **angrier**  
**more angry** } **than** the cyclist.

### COMMON MISTAKES FORMING COMPARATIVES

When forming comparatives, it is incorrect to add "more" before the adjective if it already has a comparative ending.

He's **more friendly** than her. ✓

He's **friendlier** than her. ✓

He's **more friendlier** than her. ✗

"Friendlier" and "more friendly" are correct, but "more friendlier" is not.

## 94.6 ADJECTIVES WITH MODIFIERS

Modifiers can go before comparatives to make comparisons stronger or weaker.

The tree is { **a lot**  
**much** } taller **than** the building.

Modifier Comparative



These modifiers mean there is a big difference between the things you are comparing.

These modifiers mean there is only a small difference between the things you are comparing.

The tree is { **a bit**  
**slightly** } taller **than** the building.



The palace is { **much**  
**far** } more beautiful **than** the factory.

With long comparatives, the modifier goes before "more."

Form long comparatives by putting "more" before the adjective.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The mountain is **much** taller **than** the hill.



The house is **a bit** taller **than** the statue.



The castle is **slightly** bigger **than** the hotel.



The dress is **a lot** more expensive **than** the shoes.



### COMMON MISTAKES USING "VERY" WITH COMPARATIVES

It is incorrect to modify comparatives with "very."

The tree is **much** taller **than** the building. ✓

The tree is very taller than the building. ✗

# 95 Two comparatives together

Two comparatives can be used together in a sentence to show the effect of an action. They are also used to show that something is changing.

See also:

Comparative adjectives 94

## 95.1 COMPARATIVES SHOWING CAUSE AND EFFECT

Pairing two phrases that use comparative adjectives is a way of making comparisons that show cause and effect.



The **harder** I train, the **stronger** I get.

Implies that training results in getting stronger.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



The **worse** the children behave, the **angrier** the teacher gets.



The **louder** the cat meows, the **louder** the dog barks.

## HOW TO FORM





## 95.2 SHORTENING COMPARATIVE PHRASES

Double comparatives that end with "the better" are often shortened where the context makes the meaning obvious to the listener.

How do you like your tea?



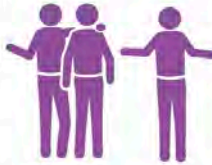
The **stronger** the **better**.

The **stronger** [the tea is,] the **better** [it tastes].

These words are implied, or understood, and can be left out.

"The more the merrier" is a phrase that means when more people are at an event, the better it will be.

Can I bring my brother along?

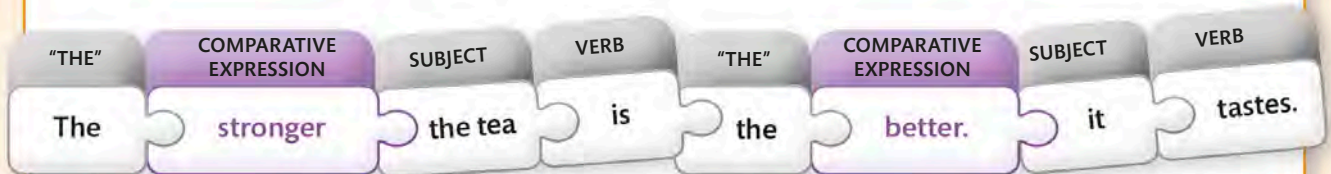


Sure! The **more** the **merrier**.

This expression means people are welcome.

The **more** [people come,] the **merrier** [the party will be].

### HOW TO FORM



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

What time do we need to leave?



The **sooner** the **better**.

Do we need to take a big suitcase?



Yes. The **bigger** the **better**.

### 95.3 COMPARATIVES SHOWING CHANGE

A comparative can be repeated to show that something is changing. This expression emphasizes the change, and is often used to describe extremes.



The weather is getting **colder** and **colder**.

The repetition emphasizes that the change is continuing.

"And" goes between the repeated comparatives.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The tree outside my house is growing **taller** and **taller**.



The car went **faster** and **faster** down the hill.



### 95.4 LONG COMPARATIVES SHOWING CHANGE

In two comparatives that go with long adjectives, "more" is repeated but the adjective is not.



Houses are getting **more** and **more** expensive.

"More" is repeated.

The adjective is only used once, after the second "more."

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



His music is getting **more** and **more** annoying.



My job has become **more** and **more** stressful.

# 96 "As... as" comparisons

Comparisons using "as... as" constructions can be used to discuss degrees of similarity and difference. They can be modified with adverbs to make them stronger or weaker.

See also:

Adjectives 92

Adverbs of degree 100

## 96.1 "AS... AS" COMPARISONS

"As... as" comparisons are used with an adjective to compare things that are similar.

Lisa is **as** tall **as** Marc.

The adjective is in its normal form.



Penny is **not** **as** tall **as** Marc.

"Not" makes the sentence negative.

"So" is only used in negative comparisons.



## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT + VERB

Lisa is

"AS"

as

ADJECTIVE

tall

"AS"

as

REST OF SENTENCE

Marc.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Will today be **as** hot **as** yesterday?



Your desk is **as** messy **as** mine.



The bus is **not so** crowded **as** the train.



Jenny is **not as** busy **as** Will.



## 96.2 "AS... AS" COMPARISONS WITH MODIFIERS

Modifiers can be added to "as... as" comparisons to make them more detailed or to add emphasis.



Emphasizing equality.

Bottled water is **just as** expensive **as** coffee.



Comparing similarity.

The girls were **almost as** loud **as** the boys.



This has a very similar meaning to "almost as" but contrasts the difference rather than comparing the similarity.

The movie is **not quite as** good **as** the book.



Specific degree of difference.

The bike is **half as** long **as** the car.



Emphasizing difference.

The mouse is **nowhere near as** big **as** the bird.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Sita is **almost as** frightened **as** Justin.



George is **almost as** tired **as** Hetty.



I think fruit is **just as** delicious **as** cake.



Seth is **nowhere near as** old **as** Mabel.



The door is **half as** wide **as** the window.



The skyscraper is **not quite as** tall **as** the mountain.



# 97 Superlative adjectives

Superlative adjectives, such as “the biggest” or “the smallest,” are used to talk about extremes. Long adjectives take “most” and “least” to show an extreme.

See also:

Articles 63 Adjectives 92

Comparative adjectives 94

## 97.1 SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

For most adjectives with one or two syllables, “-est” is added to make the superlative.

Horses are faster than dogs,  
but cheetahs are **the fastest** land animals.

The comparative describes the difference between two things.

The definite article (“the”) is always used before the superlative.

The superlative describes which thing is the most extreme.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Giraffes are **the tallest** animals in the world.



Blue whales are **the largest** animals in the world.



Sloths are **the slowest** animals in the zoo.



Dolphins are **the smartest** animals in the world.

## HOW TO FORM

SUBJECT + VERB

Cheetahs are

“THE” + SUPERLATIVE

**the fastest**

REST OF SENTENCE

land animals.

## 97.2 FORMING SUPERLATIVES

There are different rules for forming superlatives depending on the ending of the simple form of the adjective.

ADJECTIVE

close

early

big

SUPERLATIVE

closest

earliest

biggest

If the adjective ends in "-e," "-st" is added.

For some adjectives ending in "-y," the "-y" is removed and "-iest" added.

For adjectives ending consonant-vowel-consonant, the final letter is doubled and "-est" is added.

### EXAMPLES



Driving is **the easiest** way to get there.



The firefighter was **the bravest** person I'd ever met.



This has been **the hottest** summer in years!

## 97.3 IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES

Some common adjectives have irregular superlatives.

ADJECTIVE

good

bad

far

SUPERLATIVE

best

worst

farthest (US)  
furthest (UK)

### EXAMPLES



School days are **the best** days of your life.



I was **the worst** at drawing in my art class.



I lived **the farthest** from school of all my friends.



## 97.4 SUPERLATIVES WITH LONG ADJECTIVES

For some two-syllable adjectives and for adjectives of three syllables or more, use "the most" or "the least" before the adjective to form the superlative.



The motorcycle is more expensive than the scooter,  
but the sports car is **the most expensive** vehicle.

"The most" is used  
with the adjective.

The adjective stays the same.  
"Expensivest" is not a valid form.

The motorcycle is less expensive than the sports car,  
but the scooter is **the least expensive** vehicle.

"The least" means the opposite of "the most."

### HOW TO FORM

| SUBJECT + VERB | "THE" + MOST / LEAST | ADJECTIVE | REST OF SENTENCE  |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| This is        | the most             | expensive | dish on the menu. |
|                | the least            |           |                   |

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The science museum is **the most interesting** museum in town.



This is **the least comfortable** chair in the room.



The Twister is **the most exciting** ride in the theme park.



Teacups are **the least enjoyable** ride in the theme park.





## COMMON MISTAKES FORMING SUPERLATIVES

When forming superlatives, it is incorrect to add "most" before the adjective if it already has a superlative ending.

"Best" is already a superlative adjective so "most" is unnecessary.

I am **most best** at running. ❌

I am the **best** at running. ✅

## 97.5 SUPERLATIVES WITH MODIFIERS

"Easily" or "by far" can make superlative adjectives more specific.

"One of" shows that the superlative belongs to a group of things.



The clock tower is **easily by far** the **tallest** building in the town.

These modifiers make the superlative stronger.

"One of" makes the superlative part of a group.

With long superlatives the modifier goes before "the."

The clock tower is **one of the most imposing** buildings in the town.

If "one of" is used with superlatives, the noun must be in plural form.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Sally is **easily the tallest** person I know.



This hostel is **by far the cheapest** place to stay.



Tim is **easily the shortest** person I know.



The Grand is **by far the most expensive** place to stay.



Physics is **one of the most confusing** subjects I study.



English is **one of the least complicated** subjects I study.



# 98 Adverbs of manner

Words such as “quietly” and “loudly” are adverbs. They describe and give more information about verbs, adjectives, phrases, and other adverbs.

See also:

Adjectives 92

Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 93

## 98.1 ADVERBS OF MANNER

Adverbs of manner describe the way something is done. They usually come after the verb they describe.

“Quietly” describes how I speak.

**I speak quietly.**

**He speaks loudly.**

“Loudly” describes how he speaks.



## 98.2 HOW TO FORM

Most adverbs of manner are formed by adding “-ly” to the adjective. If the adjective ends in “-y,” the “-y” is left out and “-ily” is added to make the adverb.

**bad**  
↓  
**badly**

**careful**  
↓  
**carefully**

**easy**  
↓  
**easily**

The “-y” is dropped. “-ily” is added.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

A tortoise moves **slowly**.



Horses can run **quickly**.



She sings **beautifully**.



I can play the piano **badly**.



My dad sneezes **noisily**.



My sister dresses **stylishly**.





### 98.3 IRREGULAR ADVERBS OF MANNER

Some adverbs aren't formed by adding "-ly" to the adjective.

good



well

The adverb is totally different from the adjective.

straight



straight

The adverb is the same as the adjective.

early



early

Adjectives ending "-ly" don't change to become adverbs.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

It's dangerous to drive **fast**.



The job didn't last **long**.



Kris often arrives **late**.



Jon always studies **hard**.



### 98.4 ADVERBS WITH THE SAME FORM AS ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives have more than one meaning. In these cases, the equivalent adverb is often formed differently depending on the meaning of the adjective.

This means "small."

Chop the onion into **fine** pieces.



Chop it **finely**.

The adverb is formed in the usual way by adding "-ly" to the adjective. "Fine" is incorrect here.

This means "good."

I'm **fine**.



I'm doing **fine**.

The adverb has the same form as the adjective. "Finely" is incorrect here.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

It's **free** for children.



Children are admitted **free**.

We advocate **free** speech.



You can speak **freely**.

# 99 Comparative and superlative adverbs

Adverbs have comparative forms to compare or show differences. They also have superlative forms to talk about extremes.

See also:

Adjectives 92 Comparative adjectives 94

Superlative adjectives 97 Adverbs of manner 98

## 99.1 REGULAR COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

Most **comparative** adverbs are formed using "more" or "less."

COMPARATIVE

Karen eats **more quickly** than Tim.

Tim eats **less quickly** than Sarah.



Most **superlative** adverbs are formed using "most" or "least."

SUPERLATIVE

Carmen cooks the **most frequently**.

Bob cooks the **least frequently**.



## 99.2 IRREGULAR COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

"Well" and "badly" have the same comparative and superlative forms as their corresponding adjectives, "good" and "bad." They are both irregular.

ADJECTIVE

ADVERB

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

good



well



better



best

bad



badly



worse



worst

### 99.3 SHORT COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

For some shorter adverbs, the comparative or superlative adjective is sometimes used as the comparative or superlative adverb.



COMPARATIVE

My dog moves **slower** / **more slowly** than my cat.

Both are correct.

SUPERLATIVE

My tortoise moves the **slowest** / **most slowly**.

Both are correct.

#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

My sister always runs **faster** than me.



My sister can run fast, but our brother runs **the fastest**.



I got to work **earlier** than everyone else today.



I always arrive **the earliest** when I cycle, as I beat the traffic.



I'm training **harder** than my friend for the judo competition.



This is **the hardest** I've ever trained for a competition.



### 99.4 COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

Adverbs that have the same form as an adjective can only become comparative and superlative adverbs by adding "-er" and "-est."

COMPARATIVE

My colleague always works **later** than me.



SUPERLATIVE

My boss always stays **the latest**.



# 100 Adverbs of degree

Adverbs of degree can be placed in front of adjectives and verbs to strengthen or weaken their original meaning. Some adverbs can only be paired with certain adjectives.

See also:

Adjectives 92

Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 93

## 100.1 GRADING ADVERBS

Adverbs that can be used with gradable adjectives are called grading adverbs. They can be used to make an adjective's meaning stronger or weaker.

### TIP

Gradable adjectives are adjectives which can be made weaker or stronger by adverbs.



This book is **very**  
**extremely**  
**really**  
**remarkably** interesting.



This book is **fairly**  
**quite**  
**slightly** interesting.



This book is **not very**  
**barely**  
**not particularly** interesting.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

My brother is **extremely** talented.



That discussion was **fairly** heated.



The sunset was **remarkably** pretty.



I'm feeling **slightly** unwell.



This TV show is **not very** exciting.



I'm **not particularly** happy about this.



## 100.2 NON-GRADING ADVERBS

Some adverbs can be used to qualify non-gradable adjectives. These are called “non-grading adverbs,” and often mean “entirely” or “almost entirely.” They cannot usually be used with gradable adjectives.

### TIP

Non-gradable adjectives are adjectives which cannot usually be modified.

Her presentation was **absolutely** awful!



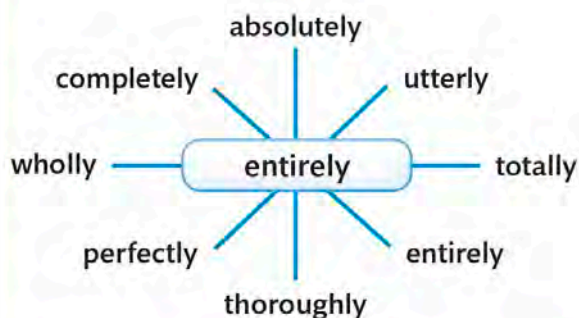
She has a **totally** unique presenting style.



She had a **completely** American audience.



### COMMON NON-GRADING ADVERBS



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The rain is **utterly** torrential.



Our trip was **totally** awesome.



My twin sons are **entirely** identical.



Your answers were **perfectly** correct.



This class is **essentially** pointless.



The weather's **almost** perfect.



This test is **practically** impossible.



I've **virtually** finished my work.



### 100.3 "REALLY," "FAIRLY," AND "PRETTY"

A few adverbs can be used with both gradable and non-gradable adjectives. They are "really" (meaning "very much"), and "pretty" and "fairly" (both meaning "quite a lot, but not very").

What you need is a **really** { **good**  
**great** } idea.

Gradable

Non-gradable



You need to be **fairly** { **confident**  
**certain** } it works.



Inventing a new product is **pretty** { **difficult**  
**impossible** }.



### 100.4 "QUITE"

"Quite" can be used with both gradable and non-gradable adjectives. In US English, it usually means "very." In UK English, it weakens gradable adjectives to mean "not very," but strengthens non-gradable adjectives to mean "very" or "completely."

Her invention is **quite incredible**.

[Her invention is absolutely fantastic.]

Her idea was **quite good**.

[Her idea was really good. (US)]

[Her idea was good, but not great. (UK)]



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I proposed to my husband.  
It was **quite perfect**.



I find it **quite necessary** to  
shower after exercise.



I was **quite upset** when  
I lost my pet rabbit.



It can be **quite difficult** to adjust  
when you move abroad.







## COMMON MISTAKES GRADING AND NON-GRADING ADVERBS

Only grading adverbs can be used with gradable adjectives, and only non-grading adverbs can be used with non-gradable adjectives.

### GRADING ADVERBS

This book is **very good**. ✓

This book is **absolutely good**. ✗

### NON-GRADING ADVERBS

The plot is **very great**. ✗

The plot is **absolutely great**. ✓

## 100.5 USING ADVERBS OF DEGREE TO DESCRIBE VERBS

"Quite," "really," and "absolutely" can be used to modify verbs. These modifying words must go before the verb.

In UK English "quite" doesn't have as strong an emphasis as "really." In US English the emphasis is stronger.

I **quite enjoy** cycling.

"Quite" can be used before "enjoy" and "like."



"Really" is used to mean "a lot more."

I **really like** cycling.

"Really" can be used before "like," "love," "enjoy," "don't like," and "hate."



"Absolutely" is used in extreme forms.

I **absolutely love** cycling.

"Absolutely" can be used before "love" and "hate."



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

He **quite likes** playing tennis.



I **really don't like** cooking.



He **really loves** eating cake.



She **really hates** waking up early.



She **really enjoys** playing guitar.



They **absolutely hate** singing.



# 101 Adverbs of time

Adverbs of time are used to give more precise information about exactly when something happens. They can also refer to a continuing event or action.

See also:

Present continuous 4

Past perfect simple 11

## 101.1 "JUST" AND "ABOUT TO"

These adverbs give more information about when or if an action happened.

Means something has happened very recently.

Tom has **just** arrived home and he's **about to** go to bed.

Means something will happen very soon.



RECENT PAST



NOW



NEAR FUTURE

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I've **just** called a cab. It should be here soon.



I'm on my way. I've **just** finished packing my suitcase.



I was going to have a meal at the airport, but the plane has **just** arrived.



The flight attendant is **about to** bring us food.



The plane is **about to** land. We must fasten our seat belts.



I'm **about to** book a table for tonight. How many of us are there?



## 101.2 "ALREADY" AND "YET"

"Already" is used when something has happened, usually sooner than expected. "Yet" means "until now." It shows that something hasn't happened, but it will happen in the future.

Means something has happened.

The show has **already** started, but we haven't arrived **yet**.

Means "until now."



PAST



NOW



FUTURE

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

What time is Andrew going to get here?



He's **already** arrived.



Has Rob cooked the dinner?



No, not **yet**.



Have you booked the taxi?



No, I haven't called them **yet**.



I'll order the pizzas now.



It's OK. I've **already** ordered them.



## 101.3 "STILL"

The adverb "still" means an action or situation is ongoing.

I'm **still** watering the flowers.



PAST

NOW

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



I'm **still** working. I won't finish until 7 tonight.



The shop is **still** open. Let's go in before it closes.



The phone is **still** ringing. Will someone answer it?



We **still** live in the same house, but it's too small for us now.



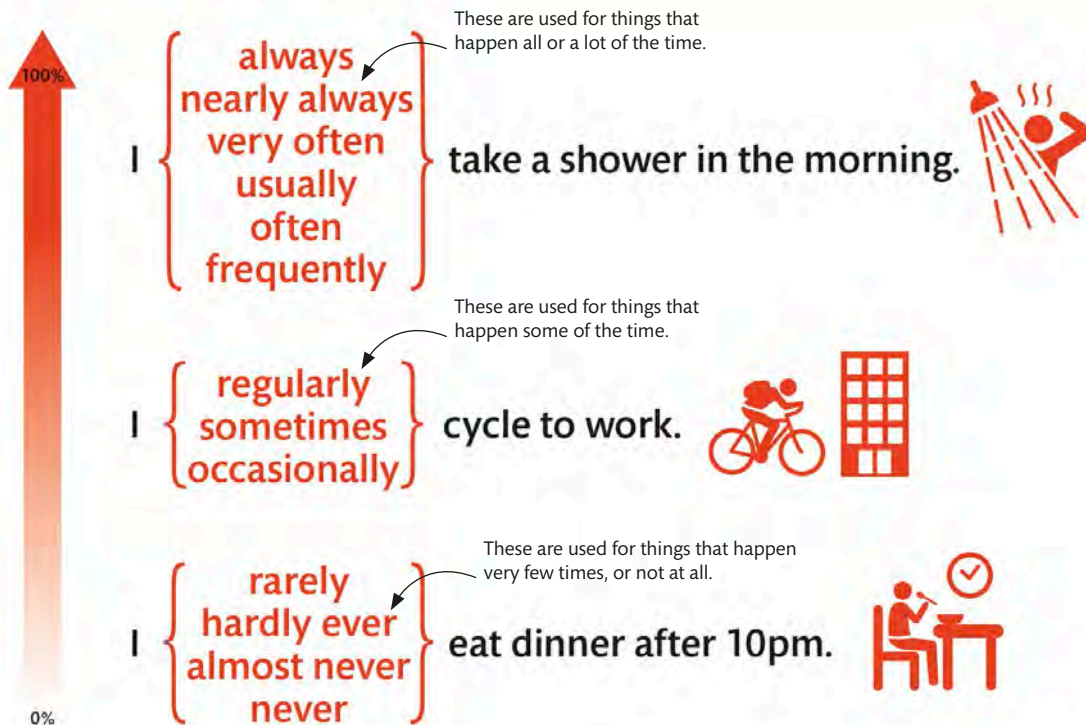
# Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency show how often something is done, from something done very frequently ("always") to something not done at all ("never").

See also:

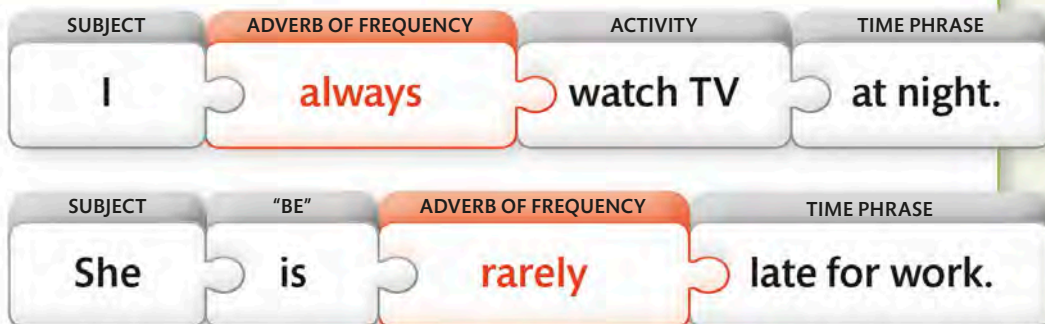
Forming questions 34

## 102.1 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY



## HOW TO FORM

Adverbs of frequency usually go between the subject and the main verb. The time phrase usually goes at the end of the sentence.



## 102.2 ADVERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

Frequency can also be described with more precise expressions.  
Unlike adverbs of frequency, these must sit at the end of a phrase.



The adverb of frequency  
usually goes before the verb.

I { **often**  
**regularly**  
**hardly ever** } go running.

Precise frequency expressions  
usually go at the end of a phrase.

I go running { **five times a week.**  
**every Tuesday.**  
**once a year.** }

## 102.3 QUESTIONS ABOUT FREQUENCY

"How often" is used to ask about how often someone does an activity.

"When" is used to ask about the day or time it is done.

**How often** do you go away?



I usually go away  
once a year.

**When** do you go running?



I go on Thursday nights.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**How often** do you go to the beach?



Not very often.

**How often** do you see your friends?



All the time.

**When** do you go to the gym?



On Tuesdays and Fridays.

**When** does your family eat dinner?



At 6pm every evening.

# 103 "So" and "such"

"So" and "such" are adverbs which can be used with certain words to add emphasis. They are similar in meaning, but they are used in different structures.

## See also:

Adjectives **92** Comparative adjectives **94** Adverbs of manner **98** Comparative and superlative adverbs **99**

### 103.1 "SO" AND "SUCH"

Unlike most adverbs, "such" can be used before a noun to add emphasis. It can also be used before an adjective and noun combination.

"SUCH" + "A / AN" + NOUN

The trial was **such** a success.



"SUCH" + "A / AN" + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

It was **such** an important experiment.



#### TIP

"Such" + "a / an" is more common with extreme nouns rather than neutral ones.

"So" can be used before an adjective or an adverb to add emphasis.

"SO" + ADJECTIVE

The reaction is **so** dangerous.



"SO" + ADVERB

The surgery went **so** well!



#### TIP

"So" is never used on its own before comparative words.

"So much" is used before a comparative adjective or a comparative adverb to add stronger emphasis.

"SO MUCH" + COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE

This hospital is **so much** cleaner than that other one.



"SO MUCH" + COMPARATIVE ADVERB

Diseases spread **so much** faster as a result of air travel.





## 103.2 "SO" AND "SUCH" WITH "THAT"

"That" can be used with "so" and "such" to introduce a particular result caused by the fact being emphasized.

"SUCH" + "A / AN" + NOUN + "THAT"

The disease is **such** a mystery **that** it doesn't even have a name yet.



"SUCH" + "A / AN" + ADJECTIVE + NOUN + "THAT"

This is **such** a strange injury **that** it is hard to diagnose.



"SO" + ADJECTIVE + "THAT"

Medical research is **so** expensive **that** drugs are often costly.



"SO" + ADVERB + "THAT"

He recovered **so** quickly **that** he was able to go home the next day.



"SO MUCH" + COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE + "THAT"

The new treatment was **so much** more effective **that** he felt better the same day.



"SO MUCH" + COMPARATIVE ADVERB + "THAT"

Hospitals are now being built **so much** more quickly **that** more people can be treated.



# 104 “Enough” and “too”

“Enough” is used when there is the correct degree or amount of something. “Too” is used when something is more than necessary or wanted.

See also:

Countable and uncountable nouns 70

Adjectives 92 Adverbs of manner 98

## 104.1 ADJECTIVE / ADVERB + “ENOUGH”

“Enough” can be used after an adjective or adverb to show that it’s the right degree.

ADJECTIVE + ENOUGH

This house is **big enough** for us.



ADVERB + ENOUGH



She isn’t speaking **loudly enough**. I can’t hear her.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



This food isn’t **hot enough** to eat.



My bag is **big enough** for my books.



The traffic isn’t moving **quickly enough**.



I didn’t read the instructions **carefully enough**.

## 104.2 NOUN + “ENOUGH”

“Enough” and “not enough” can be used to talk about quantities of countable and uncountable nouns. “Enough” comes before the noun.

Do we have **enough balloons**?

Balloons are countable.



We only have two. That’s **not enough**.

“Enough” can also be used without a noun.

Do we have **enough food**?

Food is uncountable.



We have these snacks. That’ll be **enough**.



### 104.3 "TOO" + ADJECTIVE / ADVERB

"Too" can be used before an adjective or adverb to show that it's more than enough.

TOO + ADJECTIVE

That meal was **too big**. I'm so full.



TOO + ADVERB

This bus is going **too slowly**. I'm going to be late.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

"Far" and "much" can be used before "too" for emphasis.



In winter my house is far **too cold**.



Jo takes her job much **too seriously**.



My coat is **too big** for me.



Jessica talks far **too quietly**.



Don't go swimming in the lake. It's **too dangerous**.



I'm never on time for work. I always wake up **too late**.

### 104.4 "ENOUGH" AND "TOO" WITH AN INFINITIVE CLAUSE

In English, "enough" and "too" are used with infinitive clauses. They state whether something is to the right degree or extent for the infinitive clause to happen.

Is this mango ripe **enough** to eat?



Yes, it's ripe **enough** to eat.



No, it's **not** ripe **enough** to eat.



No, it's **too** ripe to eat.





# 105 Prepositions

Prepositions are words that are used to show relationships between different parts of a clause, for example relationships of time, place, or reason.

**See also:**

Infinitives and participles **51** Verbs with prepositions **54**  
Singular and plural nouns **69** Personal pronouns **77**

## 105.1 SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions describe the relationship between two other words. They are usually part of a prepositional phrase, which is made up of a preposition followed by an object (a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase).

There's a beautiful park **by** my house.

"By" describes where the park is in relation to the house.



Chrissy goes to the gym **on** Wednesdays.

"On" helps to describe when Chrissy goes to the gym.



## 105.2 COMPLEX PREPOSITIONS

Some prepositions are made up of two words which act as a single unit. They behave the same way as one-word prepositions.

The bank is **next to** the library.



## 105.3 PARALLEL PREPOSITIONS

When the same preposition applies to more than one word in a list, the preposition only needs to be used once.

I sent presents **to** Al and [to] Ed.



When different words need different prepositions, each preposition must be used.

Look **at** and listen **to** the teacher.



## 105.4 PREPOSITIONS AND GERUNDS

If a verb comes immediately after a preposition, it has to be a gerund, which is the “-ing” form of a verb.



After **graduating**, I worked in a hospital.

Preposition

Gerund



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Instead of **applying** for a job, I went to college.



After **seeing** the job listing, I wrote a cover letter.



## 105.5 PREPOSITIONS AT THE END OF SENTENCES

Prepositions can come in many different places in a sentence, including at the end.

I'm listening **to** some music. ✓

I like having something to listen **to**. ✓



## 105.6 "TO"

"To" can cause confusion because it can be a preposition, but it is also used to form infinitives.

Here, "to" is part of the infinitive verb "to see." When used like this, it is not a preposition.

Here, "to" is part of the phrasal verb "look forward to," and is a preposition. Therefore, it must be followed by a noun, pronoun, or gerund.

I'm going **to** see my friends tonight.



I'm looking forward **to** seeing them.

Gerund

# 106 Prepositions of place

Prepositions of place are used to relate the position or location of one thing to another. Using a different preposition usually changes the meaning of a sentence.

See also:

Question words 35

Prepositions 105

## 106.1 "IN," "AT," AND "ON"

"In" is used to position something or someone inside a large area or in a three-dimensional space.

The Louvre is **in** Paris.



David is **in** his bedroom.

"In" positions David inside his bedroom.



"At" is used to talk about an exact point.

Turn left **at** the next corner.



Let's meet **at** the restaurant.



"On" is used to position something in line with, next to, on top of, or attached to something else.

I love traveling **on** trains.



There's a spider **on** the floor!



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

They live **in** a hot country.



I will meet you **at** the beach.



I like that picture **on** the wall.



The dog is sleeping **in** his basket.



Jane is working **at** her desk.



The books are **on** the table.





## 106.2 PRECISE PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE

Some prepositions of place show the precise position or location of something in relation to something else. They can be used to answer a "where" question.



The bird is flying  
**above** the cat.



The bird is sitting  
**on top of** the tree.



The dog usually sits  
**between** Ed and Ben.



The cat is {  
**under**  
**underneath**  
**beneath**  
**below**} the table.



Jack is {  
**next to**  
**near**} the tree.



The basket is  
**in front of** the cat.



Jack is hiding  
**behind** the tree.



Sally sits **opposite**  
Fred at work.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

There's a sign **above** the door.



There's a mouse **underneath** the bed!



My house is **near** a lovely park.



The table is **opposite** the television.



I was stuck **behind** a truck  
all the way home.



I like those photos  
**on top of** the bookshelf.



# 107 Prepositions of time

Prepositions of time are often used to talk about schedules and routines. They give information about when something happens, and how long it lasts.

See also:

Present perfect continuous 12

Prepositions 105

## 107.1 "ON"

"On" is often used before days of the week to say when something happens.

I work **on** Mondays.

In US English the preposition can be left out.

"-s" can be added to the day of the week to show that the thing happens regularly on that day.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The library is closed **on** Sundays.



I'm going shopping **on** Saturday.



I have orchestra practice **on** Fridays.



I'll visit my grandparents **on** Monday.



## 107.2 "AT"

"At" is usually used to express what time something happens.

I leave the house **at** 8am.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

They are meeting **at** 1 o'clock.



I have an appointment **at** 7 o'clock.



I have a yoga class **at** lunchtime.



I get the bus **at** half past 8.



### 107.3 "ON" AND "AT" WITH "THE WEEKEND"

When talking about the weekend, US English uses "on," whereas UK English uses "at."



I watch TV { on / at } the weekend.

"On the weekend" is more common in the US.

"At the weekend" is more common in the UK.

### 107.4 "IN"

"In" has a similar meaning as "during" and is used before months, years, seasons, and general times of day, e.g. "morning" and "afternoon."

I go to the gym in the morning.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I usually watch TV in the evening.



She's going to Europe in June.



I was born in 1973.



I enjoy gardening in summer.



### 107.5 "PAST" AND "TO"

"Past" and "to" are prepositions of time that are mainly used when telling the time.

"Past" means "after the hour."

It's twenty past seven.



"To" means "until the hour."

It's twenty to seven.





## 107.6 PREPOSITIONS SHOWING DURATION

"From... to..." or "between... and..." are used to say when an activity starts and finishes.

"From" is used to say the time something starts.

I work **from** 9am **to** 5pm.

"To" is used to say the time something finishes.

"Between" is used to say the time something starts.

I work **between** 9am **and** 5pm.

"And" is used to say the time something finishes.



"Until" can be used to say when an ongoing situation finishes.

"UNTIL" + TIME OR DATE

I will be working **until** five o'clock.



"Since" can be used to say when an ongoing situation started.

"SINCE" + TIME OR DATE

I have been working **since** 9am.



"For" can be used to express how long something has been happening.

"FOR" + QUANTITY OF TIME

I have been working **for** six hours.



"During" can be used to express when something was happening, rather than how long it went on for.

I relaxed **during** my break.





## COMMON MISTAKES TENSES WITH "SINCE"

"Since" is usually used with perfect tenses with reference to the past. It is not used with the present simple.

The present perfect continuous is often used with since.

Tim has been **working** here since last year. ✓

Tim works here since last year. ✗

Since can't be used with the present simple.

## 107.7 OTHER PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

"By" is used to talk about when something will be done or finished. It means "at" or "before."

"BY" + TIME

I will finish this report **by** 3pm.



NOW



3PM

"Before" is used to talk about something that happens prior to something else or a certain time.

"BEFORE" + TIME

I will finish work **before** 6 o'clock.



NOW



6PM

"After" is used to refer to an event that follows another event.

I'll clean the tables **after** my break.



NOW



BREAK



FUTURE

# 108 Other prepositions

Prepositions can be used to express relationships other than place and time, such as origin, ownership, and absence.

**See also:**

The passive **24** Verb patterns with prepositions **54** Prepositions **105**

## 108.1 "BY"

"By" has several common uses in English.

When used to talk about an action, it refers to something that is done to achieve a certain result.

RESULT ACTION  
I fixed my television **by** hitting it.



It is used to say who wrote or made something.

I'm reading *1984* **by** George Orwell.



It is used to talk about methods of travel.

I always go to work **by** train.



"On foot" is an exception to this rule.

It can be used to form the passive voice.

This was painted **by** a famous artist.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I broke my phone **by** dropping it in a puddle.



It's too far to walk into town.  
It's much easier to go **by** bus.



This show is based on a short story **by** Jane Austen.



That new building was designed **by** a famous architect.





## 108.2 "WITH" AND "WITHOUT"

"With" has several common uses in English.

It can mean "accompanied by."

I went to a restaurant **with** my wife.



It is used to talk about possession.

I want a job **with** a good salary.



It is used to talk about the thing used to perform an action.

I cut this apple **with** a knife.



"Without" is used to talk about the absence of something.

Vera came to the party **without** a gift.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I need to move somewhere **with** better phone reception.



I need to hire someone **with** excellent computer skills.



Christina paid for the dress **with** her credit card.



Wait! Don't leave **without** me!



## 108.3 "ABOUT"

"About" is mainly used to mean "on the subject of."

I'm watching a documentary **about** Ancient Greece.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I'm going to call the bank **about** their bad service.



I'm sorry, but I have no idea what you're talking **about**.



# 109 Dependent prepositions

Some words must be followed by a specific preposition, called a dependent preposition. These words can be adjectives, verbs, or nouns.

**See also:**

Types of verbs **49** Singular and plural nouns **69**

Adjectives **92** Prepositions **105**

## 109.1 ADJECTIVES WITH DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

Some adjectives are always followed by the same preposition when used in a sentence.

ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION

It was **good of** my friend to offer to babysit last night.



Some adjectives can take one of a choice of prepositions in the same sentence without changing their meaning.

"Surprised" can be followed by either "at" or "by" without a change in meaning.

You seemed **surprised** **{ at by }** their behavior.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The babysitter was **angry about** looking after naughty children.



My parents are **annoyed with** me for not cleaning my room.



My friends are getting **ready for** their new baby.



The children are **impressed by** practical jokes.



Janine is **tired of** watching children's shows on TV.



She is **excited about** going hiking in the mountains.



## 109.2 VERBS WITH DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

Some verbs are followed by a specific preposition before an object. Different verbs are followed by different prepositions.

VERB + PREPOSITION



The head chef used to **shout at** the staff to encourage them to work harder.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The café was **counting on** the new menu to impress its customers.



The café **advertised for** another chef to join the team.



The head chef **spoke to** the manager about hiring more kitchen staff.



What do you **think about** leaving early on Fridays?



## 109.3 VERBS WITH "TO" OR "FOR"

Some verbs can take either "to" or "for," depending on the context. "To" is usually used when there is a transfer of something, whereas "for" is used when someone benefits from something.



He **sold** the house **to** the family.

[The family bought the house.]



He **sold** the house **for** the family.

[He sold the house on behalf of the family.]



## 109.4 NOUNS WITH DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

Some nouns are always followed by the same preposition when used in a sentence.

NOUN + PREPOSITION

I always keep a **photograph of** my family on my desk.



Some nouns can take one of a choice of prepositions in the same sentence without changing their meaning.

"Advantages" can be followed by either "in" or "to" without a change in meaning.



There are **advantages** { **in** / **to** } moving away to study.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

It is important to have a positive **attitude toward** studying.



The **cause of** traffic jams is often bad town planning.



I've been working hard to find a **solution to** this problem.



There has been a steady **increase in** students passing their exams.



The **demand for** public buses increases every year.



Take your time planning a **response to** the essay question.



## 109.5 WORDS WITH DIFFERENT DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

Some adjectives, verbs, and nouns can be followed by a choice of prepositions. The meaning of the phrase is dependent on which preposition the adjective, verb, or noun is paired with.

I'm **anxious for** my vacation to start.

[I'm excited for my vacation.]



I'm **anxious about** being late for my flight.

[I'm worried I'm going to miss my flight.]



He **talked to** the teacher.

[He had a conversation with the teacher.]



He **talked about** the teacher.

[He had a conversation with someone else, discussing the teacher.]



I have a good **relationship with** my parents.

[The relationship between me and my parents is good.]



The **relationship between** family members is important.

[It's important that family members have a good relationship.]



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I'm **upset about** how badly my exams went.



I'm **upset with** myself for failing my exams.



The charity needs to **appeal for** more volunteers.



The campaigns **appeal to** students.



Pests are a serious **problem for** farmers.



Farmers have a serious **problem with** pests.



# 110 Coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions are words that link words, phrases, or clauses of equal importance. There are special rules for using commas with coordinating conjunctions.

See also:

Defining relative clauses 81

Ellipsis 89

## 110.1 USING "AND" TO JOIN SENTENCES

"And" is used to join two sentences together in order to avoid repeating words that appear in both, and to link ideas.

There's a library. There's a restaurant.

There's a library **and** a restaurant.

"There's" is the same as "There is."

The second "there's" can be dropped when joining sentences using "and."



## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Jazmin's sister lives **and** works in Paris.



I bought a dress **and** some shoes for the party tonight.



My father **and** brother are both engineers.



My sister called earlier, **and** she told me she's pregnant!



Simon plays video games **and** watches TV every night.



I feel sick, I ate two sandwiches **and** a large slice of cake for lunch.

## 110.2 USING A COMMA INSTEAD OF "AND"

For lists of more than two items, a comma can replace "and."

This comma is replacing "and" in the list.

There's a library, a store, **and** a café.

Another comma is used before the "and."

The "and" is kept between the final two nouns.





### 110.3 "OR"

"Or" is most often used to list two or more choices or alternatives.

Do you want to go to Germany **or** France?

"Or" is used if there is a choice.



"Or" can also be used to talk about the consequences (usually negative) of an action.

Don't be late, **or** you will miss the train.

"Or" is used to show that missing the train is a consequence of being late.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



Should we go out **or** should we stay at home instead?



Should we paint the kitchen blue **or** green?



I can't decide whether to get a dog **or** a cat.



Be careful when cooking, **or** you might burn yourself.

### 110.4 "NOR"

"Nor" shows that two or more things are not true or do not happen. After "nor," use a positive form of the verb, and invert the verb as for a question.

I've never eaten lobster, **nor** do I want to.

The subject comes after the verb.



#### FURTHER EXAMPLES



He can't play the guitar, **nor** can he sing.



Fiona didn't turn up to dinner, **nor** did she answer my calls.



My television doesn't work, **nor** does my stereo.

#### TIP

"Nor" is uncommon in informal English.

## 110.5 "BUT"

"But" is used to join a positive statement to a negative statement, or to show a contrast between two clauses.

There's a hotel. There isn't a store.



There's a hotel, **but** there isn't a store.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



My daughter likes to eat apples, **but** she doesn't like pears.



I wanted to be an architect, **but** I didn't pass my exams.



I went to the supermarket, **but** I forgot my purse.



I'm on a diet, **but** I find it hard to avoid chocolate.



My friend does tap dancing, **but** she doesn't do ballet.



My friends invited me out tonight, **but** I don't feel well enough to go.

## 110.6 "YET"

"Yet" has a similar meaning to "but." It is used when something happens in spite of something else, or when something is true, even though it seems to contradict something else.

It's a warm day, **yet** Raymond's wearing a coat.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

George lives in the countryside, **yet** he works in a nearby city.

There was a school near my house, **yet** I went to one on the other side of town.

I've asked him to be quiet and **yet** he continues to talk during lessons.

## 110.7 "SO"

When "so" is a conjunction, it is used to show that something happens as a consequence of something else.

It was a lovely day, **so** we went for a walk.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES



My house was a mess, **so** I spent the weekend cleaning.



The cathedral is very famous, **so** it attracts a lot of tourists.



I don't like pasta, **so** I rarely go to Italian restaurants.



I work outside, **so** I have to be careful that I don't get sunburned.



Stephen moved to London, **so** he speaks English quite well now.



I ate before I came out, **so** I will only have a coffee.

## 110.8 USING COMMAS WITH COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

If a coordinating conjunction is joining two main clauses, a comma usually goes before the conjunction.

It was raining, **and** there was lightning.



If a coordinating conjunction is joining two items, there is no need for a comma.

I'm going to wear jeans **and** a shirt.



If "and" or "or" is joining three or more items, a comma is usually added between each item and before the conjunction.

I need eggs, flour, **and** milk.



Would you like tea, coffee, **or** juice?





# 111 Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions are used to connect words, phrases, and clauses of unequal importance. They're used to say why, where, or when something happens.

See also:

Present simple **1** Modal verbs **56**

Defining relative clauses **81**

## 111.1 SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS FOR PURPOSE

"So that" can be used to talk about the purpose of an action. It is followed by another clause.



ACTION



PURPOSE

He complained **so that** he'd get a refund.

"So that" is often followed by modal verbs such as "can," "could," and "would."

"In order to" has a similar meaning to "so that," but it's followed by a verb in its base form.



He called the company **in order to** complain.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

She went back to the store **in order to** show them her receipt.



The assistant took the receipt **to** process the refund.



In informal speech, "in order" is often dropped.

If the main verb is in the past tense, the verb after "so that" usually refers to the past.

She reported the problem **so that** it could be fixed.



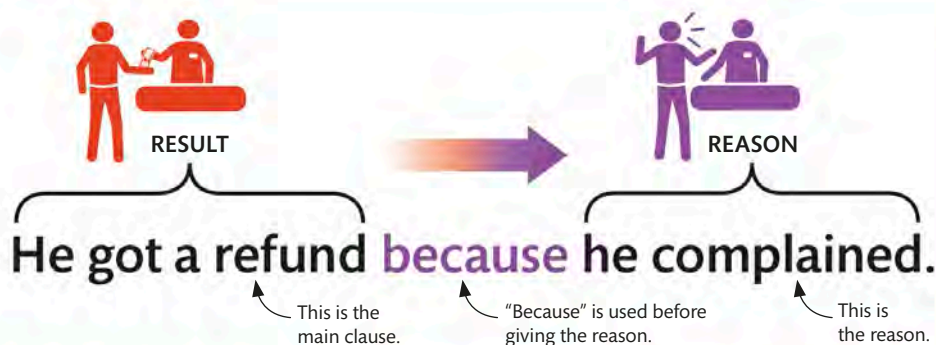
If the main verb is in the present tense, the verb after "so that" usually refers to the present or future.

They check everything **so that** customers don't receive broken items.



## 111.2 CAUSE AND REASON

"Because" is used to talk about why something happens or the reasons behind a decision.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

It's a noisy town **because** there are lots of cars.



My village is quiet **because** there are only a few families here.



I decided to move to the country **because** it's beautiful.



## 111.3 CONTRAST AND CONCESSION

"Although" is used to talk about something that is unexpectedly true.  
"Even though" means the same thing as "although," and it's more common in speech.

{ Although  
Even though }

I got up early, I was late to work.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Although** I've done it before, I found the run very difficult.



**Even though** I have two cousins, I've never met them.



I'm going to the beach this weekend, **even though** I can't swim.



## 111.4 "WHEN"

English uses "when" as a conjunction to talk about events or actions in the future that must happen before another event or action can take place. These phrases are called subordinate time clauses and are usually used with the present simple.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

When I finish my report, I'll call you.

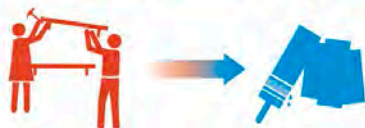


When you get home, will you make dinner?



Subordinate time clauses can also be used to ask about future events.

I'll put up shelves when the paint dries.



When it stops raining, I'll go out.



## ANOTHER WAY TO SAY IT

UK English sometimes uses the present perfect instead of the present simple in subordinate time clauses.



When it has stopped raining, we'll go outside.

We'll go outside when it has stopped raining.

We won't go outside until it has stopped raining.

The present perfect still describes a future event.



## 111.5 "AS SOON AS"

"As soon as" has a similar meaning to "when," but it implies that the second event will take place immediately once the first event is complete.



NOW

**I'll call you as soon as I leave work.**

[I'll call you immediately when I leave work.]

## ! COMMON MISTAKES TENSES AFTER TIME CONJUNCTIONS

Future forms are not used after "when" and "as soon as," even if the clause is referring to the future.

The present simple describes the first event, even though it is a future event.

**When it gets dark, he'll light the fire. ✓**

**When it will get dark, he'll light the fire. ✗**

Even though this refers to the future, it is incorrect to use a future form.

## 111.6 "WHILE"

"While" is used to connect two clauses that are happening at the same time.



**I watered the plants while my husband mowed the lawn.**

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



**I chopped the vegetables while Ted washed the potatoes.**



**I didn't get any sleep while the owl was hooting outside.**



**I read the newspaper while I waited for the kettle to boil.**

# 112 More linking words

Some words can be used to show a relationship between two sentences, or parts of a sentence. This can be cause, effect, emphasis, contrast, or comparison.

See also:

Coordinating conjunctions **110**

Subordinating conjunctions **111**

## 112.1 FORMAL LINKING WORDS

Some linking words are used most often in formal writing and speaking situations.

The castle was built in 1272, **{ whereas  
yet }** the town is modern.

Shows contrast.



His talk was popular and his book was **{ similarly  
equally }** well-liked.

Shows comparison.



Video calls are popular **{ due to  
owing to  
as a result of }** global internet access.

Shows reason.



It's free to visit the museum. **{ Hence  
Therefore }**, it's very popular.

Shows result.



He is known for his research, **{ primarily  
notably }** into royal families.

Shows emphasis.



## 112.2 INFORMAL LINKING WORDS

Some linking words are mostly used in informal writing and speech.

### TIP

Stress can be added to the linking word to emphasize the relationship between words when speaking.



I like listening to music, **but though** my mother hates it.

Shows contrast.



He's a talented swimmer, **like just as** his great-grandfather was.

Shows comparison.



The elderly can get around easily, **because of thanks to** local bus services.

Shows reason.



Staying in touch is easy, **because since as** we all have smartphones.

Shows result.



We grew up together, **so** we tell each other everything. We are very close. **As a result**, we know everything about each other.

Shows effect.



All my siblings are tall, **especially particularly** my older sister.

Shows emphasis.



# 113 Linking words overview

## 113.1 CONJUNCTIONS

### Coordinating conjunctions

join together two words, phrases, or clauses of equal importance.

Coordinating conjunction

I like roses **and** sunflowers.



I like gardening, **but** I hate mowing the lawn.



A comma is used before a conjunction to link two main clauses with different subjects. The comma shows where one main clause ends and another begins.

Subject of first main clause.

Flora tried to water her flowers, **but** the hose burst.

The second main clause has a different subject.

A comma is placed before the conjunction.



## 113.2 USES OF CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions can be used to describe a variety of relationships between two words, phrases, or clauses.



### condition

if  
in case  
unless  
as long as  
so long as  
even if



### time

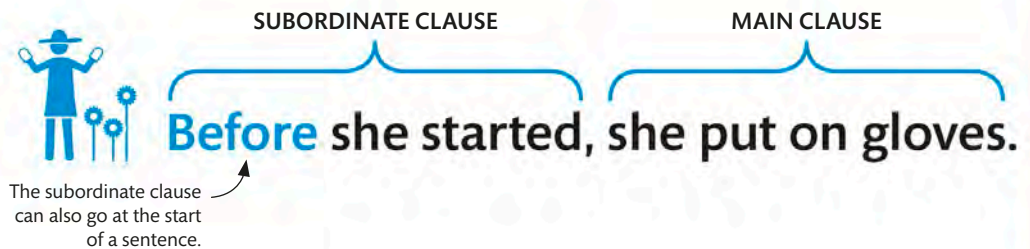
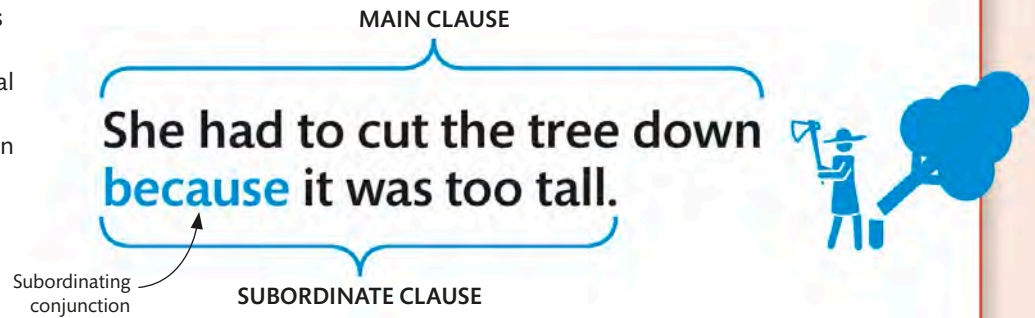
after  
until  
when  
before  
while  
as soon as

Conjunctions are linking words that describe the relationship between two parts of a sentence. They can be coordinating or subordinating.

See also:  
"Either / neither / both" 68  
Linking words R25

### Subordinating conjunctions

join together two words, phrases, or clauses of unequal importance. A subordinate clause adds more information about the main clause.



### contrast

although  
but  
however  
even though  
whereas  
yet



### cause

as  
because  
since



### reason

in order to  
in order that  
so  
so that  
since

# 114 Prefixes

Prefixes are small groups of letters which can be added to the start of many words to give them different meanings.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Singular and plural nouns 69 Adjectives 92

## 114.1 PREFIXES

Prefixes attach to the start of a word to change its meaning. Prefixes usually give the same change in meaning to each word they attach to.

**im-** = not

Polly thought her boss was very rude and **im**polite.



**mis-** = wrongly

Leona was worried that she had **mis**understood the recipe.



**re-** = again

Tom was **re**writing his essay because his teacher gave him a low grade.



**un-** = not

Jane is **un**likely to study history because she prefers science.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

This exercise is too hard.  
It's completely **im**possible!



Brendan had **mis**placed his passport.  
He couldn't find it anywhere.



I didn't work very hard this year.  
I'll have to **re**take my exams.



Please clean up your desk.  
It's very **un**tidy.



A fear of ghosts is totally **irr**ational, they don't exist!



You should go to see the new  
exhibit. It's absolutely **out**standing.






## 114.2 USING PREFIXES

Some words can take more than one kind of prefix to give different meanings.

The fish is **cooked** perfectly. It's delicious! 

The fish is **undercooked**. It tastes terrible. 

The fish is **overcooked**. It's totally burned. 

## 114.3 COMMON PREFIXES

| PREFIX        | MEANING              | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|---------------|----------------------|---|
| anti-         | against              | It's always safer to use an <b>antibacterial</b> handwash.            |
| co-           | together             | Erika loves her job because her <b>coworkers</b> are so nice.         |
| dis-          | not                  | My parents <b>disapprove</b> of my career decisions.                  |
| ex-           | former               | Clara is an <b>ex-soldier</b> . She used to be in the army.           |
| im-, in-, ir- | not                  | Unfortunately, most of my answers were <b>incorrect</b> .             |
| inter-        | between, among       | Matteo's band had become an <b>international</b> success.             |
| mid-          | middle               | Jo's essay got a low grade because it finished <b>mid-sentence</b> .  |
| mis-          | wrongly              | I think the referee <b>misjudged</b> the situation.                   |
| non-          | not                  | I don't like this book at all. The plot is complete <b>nonsense</b> . |
| out-          | better than others   | Yue's work is fantastic. She's <b>outperforming</b> everyone.         |
| over-         | too much             | It's okay to work hard, but make sure you don't <b>overdo</b> it.     |
| post-         | after                | New mothers should receive good <b>postnatal</b> care.                |
| pre-          | before               | The experiment will go ahead at a <b>prearranged</b> time.            |
| re-           | again                | If you don't get into the school, you could <b>reapply</b> next year. |
| self-         | oneself              | Ronda can be a little bit too <b>self-confident</b> sometimes.        |
| sub-          | under                | Mark's work this year has been <b>substandard</b> .                   |
| super-, sur-  | above, over          | There's a small <b>surcharge</b> if you want to use a credit card.    |
| un-           | reverse, cancel, not | Stacy couldn't find the right key to <b>unlock</b> the safe.          |
| under-        | beneath, below       | I think the waiter has <b>undercharged</b> us for this meal.          |

# 115 Suffixes

Suffixes are small groups of letters which can be added to the end of many words to give them different meanings.

See also:

Types of verbs 49

Singular and plural nouns 69 Adjectives 92

## 115.1 SUFFIXES

Suffixes attach to the end of a word to change its meaning. Suffixes usually give the same change in meaning to each word they attach to.

**-able** = possible to be

It's useful to set yourself **achievable** targets at work.



**-ful** = full of

The principal was so pleased that the play was **successful**.



**-ist** = someone who

My friend Jamie is the best **artist** I know.



**-less** = without

I don't like the food in the cafeteria. It is **tasteless**.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

Hugo is very funny and kind. He's a really **likeable** guy.



I can paint the house in a day. It's definitely **doable**.



Sarah is a **violinist**. She plays in her local orchestra.



Now that I've passed my exams, I am **hopeful** for the future.



What a boring lecture. Being there was **pointless**.



I am a **perfectionist**. My work takes me a long time.





## 115.2 USING SUFFIXES

Some words can take more than one kind of suffix to give different meanings.

The best jokes are in good **taste**.



That joke was hilarious. It was very **tasteful**.



That joke was offensive. It was very **tasteless**.



## 115.3 COMMON SUFFIXES

| SUFFIX           | MEANING                       | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| -able, -ible     | able to be                    | It is perfectly <b>acceptable</b> to submit your essays online.     |
| -al, -ial        | having characteristics of     | The verdict was based entirely on <b>circumstantial</b> evidence.   |
| -ance, -ence     | state of                      | Male lions fight each other to assert their <b>dominance</b> .      |
| -ate             | become                        | You need to <b>activate</b> your credit card before you can use it. |
| -dom             | place or state of being       | Older children can be given a greater amount of <b>freedom</b> .    |
| -en              | become                        | They are planning to <b>widen</b> the roads to reduce congestion.   |
| -er, -or         | person who performs an action | Shakespeare is probably the most famous English <b>writer</b> .     |
| -ful             | full of                       | The computer is one of the most <b>useful</b> inventions ever.      |
| -ic, -tic, -ical | having characteristics of     | Running is a great form of <b>physical</b> exercise.                |
| -ism             | an action, state, or system   | <b>Surrealism</b> was a major art movement of the 20th century.     |
| -ist, -ian       | someone who plays or does     | A <b>pianist</b> is somebody who can play the piano.                |
| -ity, -ty        | quality of                    | <b>Equality</b> is the belief that everybody should be equal.       |
| -ize             | make                          | I'm trying to <b>maximize</b> our profits by selling more stock.    |
| -less            | without                       | The possibilities of technology are <b>limitless</b> .              |
| -ment            | condition of, act of          | Buying property can be a very good <b>investment</b> .              |
| -ness            | state of                      | Lots of people today are interested in health and <b>fitness</b> .  |
| -ous             | having qualities of           | The inland taipan is the most <b>venomous</b> snake in the world.   |
| -sion, -tion     | state of being or act of      | All essays should end with a good <b>conclusion</b> .               |
| -y               | characterized by              | The weather's terrible today. It's very <b>cloudy</b> outside.      |



## 115.4 SUFFIXES CHANGING WORD CLASS

Certain suffixes are only used for specific types of words. The suffix of a word can sometimes show what part of speech the word is.

### ADJECTIVES



#### -able, -ible

comfortable  
manageable  
sensible

#### -al, -ial

accidental  
controversial  
seasonal

#### -en

golden  
wooden  
woolen

#### -ful

powerful  
useful  
wonderful

#### -ic, -tic, -ical

historic  
poetic  
radical

#### -less

harmless  
powerless  
tasteless

#### -ous

continuous  
famous  
outrageous

#### -y

cloudy  
funny  
stormy

### NOUNS



#### -acy

conspiracy  
diplomacy  
literacy

#### -al

accusal  
betrayal  
denial

#### -ance, -ence

competence  
defiance  
dominance

#### -ant, -ent

accountant  
defendant  
student

#### -ism

capitalism  
modernism  
realism

#### -ist

optimist  
pessimist  
pianist

#### -ity, -ty

equality  
royalty  
society

#### -ment

employment  
entertainment  
government

## VERBS



### -ate

activate  
debate  
inflate

### -en

brighten  
sweeten  
widen

### -ify

classify  
mystify  
simplify

### -ize

energize  
immunize  
minimize

### -dom

freedom  
kingdom  
wisdom

### -er, -or

generator  
singer  
writer

### -ness

happiness  
sadness  
sickness

### -sion, -tion

appreciation  
collision  
infection

## 115.5 SUFFIX SPELLING RULES

If the suffix starts with a vowel, and the root ends with a stressed final syllable ending consonant-vowel-consonant, the last letter of the root is doubled before adding the suffix.

occur

occurrence

If the suffix starts with a vowel and the root ends with an “-e,” the final “-e” is dropped from the root before adding the suffix. Roots ending “-ge” or “-ce” are an exception.

Root ends with “-ge.”

debate

debatable

manage

manageable

The “e” stays in the word.

If the root ends consonant plus “-y,” the “y” changes to an “i” before any suffix is added. The exception is “-ing.”

plenty

plentiful

apply

applying

“-y” doesn’t change before “-ing.”

If the root ends vowel plus “-y,” the final “-y” does not change.

Root ends vowel plus “-y.”

employ

employable

The “-y” does not change to an “i.”

In English, there are several phrases which sound or look similar, but have different meanings. It is important not to get these confused.

**See also:**

Present simple **1** Present continuous **4**  
"Used to" and "would" **15**

### 116.1 "GET USED TO" AND "BE USED TO"

To **"get used to (doing) something"** describes the process of adapting to new or different situations until they become familiar or normal.

**Waking up early for my new job was difficult at first, but eventually I **got used to** it.**



To **"be used to (doing) something"** means that something has been done for long enough that it is normal and familiar.

**I've lived in the city for years, so I **am used to** the bad pollution.**



#### TIP

These phrases should not be confused with "used to" (without "be" or "get"), which is used when talking about a regular past action.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES



**When I travel, I **get used to** different customs very quickly.**

[I find it easy to adapt to different customs when I travel.]



**I **got used to** the cold weather within a couple of weeks.**

[I adapted to the cold weather within two weeks.]



**I **am used to** spicy food as I've always eaten it.**

[I am accustomed to eating spicy food.]



**We **were used to** the old teacher, so it was a shame when she left.**

[We were accustomed to our previous teacher, but then she left.]



## 116.2 "HAVE / GET SOMETHING DONE"

"Have" and "get" can be used with a noun and the past participle to talk about something someone does for someone else. "Get" is less formal than "have."

Did you **get** your computer updated?

[Did somebody update your computer for you?]



Yes, the company **has** the computers updated regularly.

[Yes, somebody regularly updates them for the company.]

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The structure is used with "should" to give advice.

You **should get** your connection checked.

[I think you should arrange for someone to check your connection.]

They haven't **had** the locks changed yet.

[They haven't arranged for somebody to change the locks for them.]

Will you **get** the oven fixed soon?

[Will somebody fix the oven for you soon?]

The store **has** its produce checked daily.

[Somebody checks the store's produce each day.]

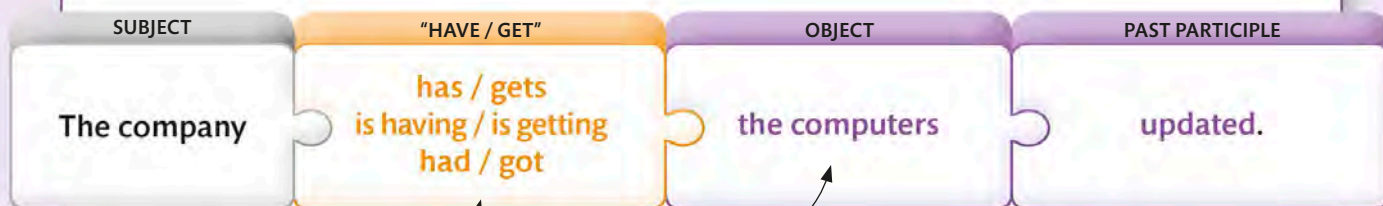
I **need to get** my hair cut.

[I need someone to cut my hair.]

Most people **have** burglar alarms installed.

[Most people have someone fit them a burglar alarm.]

### HOW TO FORM



"Have" and "get" can appear in different tenses.

The action happens to the object.

# 117 Sequencing and organizing

There are a number of words and phrases in English which help to explain the order of events. They can also be used to organize text and make it easier to understand.

See also:

More linking words **112**  
Making conversation **120**

## 117.1 SEQUENCING PHRASES

Certain words and phrases indicate at what point in a sequence something happens.



**First**, he woke up.



**Then** he ate breakfast.



**Next**, he had a shower.



**After that**, he got dressed.



**Finally**, he went to work.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



**In the morning**, we watched the sun rise over the Serengeti.



**Meanwhile**, we got ready to go on safari.



**Finally**, we saw some lions.



**First**, I got some money out of the bank.



**Second**, I bought some food from the supermarket.



**After that**, I had some coffee.



**First of all**, the chef mixed together butter and sugar.



**After that**, she added eggs and flour.



**Finally**, she put the mix in the oven.

## 117.2 FORMAL ORGANIZING PHRASES

Some discourse markers show what is coming next. They help organize paragraphs and longer passages of formal text.

### TIP

These organizing words often go at the beginning of a clause or sentence.

Sequencing markers can help to put information in order.



**First of all,**  
**To begin with,** } it is important to consider which courses you want to study.

Some markers introduce new or additional points.



**Additionally,**  
**Furthermore,**  
**Moreover,** } you should keep in mind where you want to study.

Other markers highlight examples.



**For example,**  
**For instance,** } you should consider whether you want to study abroad.



"Such as" can only be used in the middle of a sentence to introduce examples.

You can also look at other activities, a { **such as**  
**for example**  
**for instance** } club or society.

Conclusion markers are used when summing up.



**In conclusion,**  
**Overall,** } several factors will affect your choice of college.



# 118 Correcting and changing the subject

Set words and phrases can be used to correct someone, disagree, change the subject, or concede a point. They often come at the beginning of the sentence.

## See also:

More linking words **112** Deciding and hedging **119** Making conversation **120**

### 118.1 CORRECTING AND DISAGREEING

Certain words can be used to show you disagree with someone or to correct a misunderstanding.

## TIP

These phrases can appear impolite if spoken with heavy emphasis.

I don't think this painting is worth that much.

Wow! Do you like it?



**Actually**, it sold at auction for \$2 million.

I don't, **actually**. It's not very impressive.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

That play was really good, wasn't it?

**Well**, I found the plot quite hard to follow, **to be honest**.

**But** the actors were excellent!



I'm afraid I don't think so. I thought they were terrible.

Did you enjoy the book I gave you?

**Actually**, I found it quite boring.

**Really?** It's so well written!



I don't agree. I prefer thrillers.

## 118.2 CHANGING SUBJECT

"By the way" shows a change of subject.



I think this gallery is fantastic.  
Oh, **by the way**, did you read the article about this exhibit in *The Times*?

"As I was saying" returns to a previous subject after a change of subject or an interruption.



**As I was saying**, this is a fantastic exhibit. I really like the range of artwork.

"Anyway" returns to a subject after an interruption or a change in subject. It can also end a subject or a conversation.



**Anyway**, I should say goodbye. I want to visit the gallery shop before it closes.

## 118.3 CONCEDED A POINT

Certain words can be used to agree to, or concede, a point, particularly after first doubting it to be true.

**I told you** this museum is very expensive.



**You're right!** I expected it to be cheaper.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

I think this sculpture is made of stone.



**You have a good point.** At first I thought it was metal.

This painting could be by Picasso.



**I see your point.** The style is similar.

# 119 Deciding and hedging

English uses a number of words and phrases to discuss the different sides of an argument or to make sentences sound less definite.

**See also:**

Infinitives and participles **51** More linking words **112** Making conversation **120**

## 119.1 DISCUSSING ARGUMENTS

There are specific words and phrases which are used to discuss or compare the good and bad sides of an argument.



I'm not sure whether to go to the party tonight.

On the one hand, I'd have a great time.  
On the other hand, I have work to do.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES

**Although** my friends will be at the party, I don't want to stay up late.



I could go to the party. **Alternatively** I could stay in and study.



**Of course**, there is going to be good music and lots of food.



I don't want to study Art. **However**, my teacher thinks I'm good at it.



**Despite** my reservations, I think I'll go to the party anyway.





## 119.2 HEDGING

Hedging words and phrases can be added to a sentence to make its meaning less definite, direct, or strong.



Polls **{ suggest  
indicate }** that locals dislike the new statue.

Hedging verbs.

It is **{ arguably  
potentially }** the strangest statue around.

Hedging adverbs.

**{ To a certain degree,  
To some extent, }** locals feel their views are being ignored.

Hedging phrases.

## 119.3 "SEEM" AND "APPEAR"

"Seem" and "appear" are words used to distance oneself from a statement. This is useful when it is not certain if the statement is true.



The prisoners **{ seem  
appear }** to have vanished.

"Seem" and "appear" are often followed by another verb in the infinitive.

It **{ seems  
appears }** that the prison cell was left unguarded.

"It seems" or "It appears" can be followed by a "that" clause.

It would **{ seem  
appear }** that a file was used to break the bars.

"Would" adds even more distance or uncertainty.

# 120 Making conversation

Many words and phrases are used in English to ease the flow of conversation. These techniques are often called organizing, backchanneling, or stalling.

See also:  
More linking words 112  
Hedging 119

## 120.1 INFORMAL ORGANIZING WORDS

A number of general words can be used to move from one topic to another in conversational English.



## 120.2 BACKCHANNELING

When listening to another speaker, it's common to use words to show you agree and are paying attention. This is known as backchanneling.



## 120.3 STALLING TECHNIQUES

If extra time is needed to think about a difficult question before answering it, a response can be started with a stalling phrase to indicate that the question is being considered.

Would you be happy to work weekends?

**Well**, I do have two children.



What are your strengths?

**Good question.** I have excellent computer skills.



Why should we hire you?

**Let's see...** I think my experience would be very useful.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

**So**, I'm thinking of quitting my job.

**You know**, that might be a bad idea.



**I mean**, the change would be good.

**Sort of**, but you've always wanted to work where you are now.



**Now**, I didn't think of it that way.

I **kind of** think in the long run you'd be much happier staying where you are.





# R Reference

## R1 PARTS OF SPEECH

The different types of words that make up sentences are called parts of speech. Only nouns and verbs are essential elements of a sentence, but other parts of speech, such as adjectives and adverbs, can make a sentence more descriptive.

| PART OF SPEECH | DEFINITION  | EXAMPLES  |
|----------------|---|---|
| noun           | a name, object, concept or person   | cat, Evie, girl, house, water, happiness                                    |
| adjective      | describes a noun or pronoun   | big, funny, light, red, young   |
| verb           | shows an action or a state of being   | be, go, read, speak, swim, walk   |
| adverb         | describes verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, giving information on how, where, when, or how much | briskly, easily, happily, here, loudly, quite, rather, soon, together, very |
| pronoun        | takes the place of a noun   | he, she, you, we, them, it  |
| preposition    | describes the relationship between a noun or pronoun and another word in the sentence               | about, above, from, in  |
| conjunction    | a joining word, used to link words, phrases, or clauses   | and, because, but, while, yet   |
| interjection   | an exclamation or remark  | ah, hey, hi, hmm, wow, yes  |
| article        | used with a noun to specify whether the noun is a particular person or thing, or something general  | a, an, the  |
| determiner     | precedes a noun and puts the noun in context  | all, her, my, their, your   |

## R2 THE ALPHABET

The English alphabet has 26 letters. "A," "E," "I," "O," and "U" are vowels, and the rest are consonants.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk  
Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu  
Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

| PUNCTUATION MARK | NAME                              | USE  |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| .                | period (US)<br>full stop (UK)     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marks the end of a complete statement</li> <li>marks the end of an abbreviated word</li> </ul>  |
| ...              | ellipsis                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marks where text has been omitted or a sentence is unfinished</li> </ul>  |
| ,                | comma                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>follows an introductory word, phrase, or clause</li> <li>can separate a non-essential part of a sentence</li> <li>can be used with a conjunction to join two main clauses</li> <li>separates words or phrases in a list</li> <li>represents omitted words to avoid repetition in a sentence</li> <li>can be used between an introduction to speech and direct speech</li> </ul> |
| ;                | semi-colon                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>separates two main clauses that are closely related</li> <li>separates items in a complex list</li> </ul>   |
| :                | colon                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>connects a main clause to a clause, phrase, or word that is an explanation of the main clause, or that emphasizes a point in the main clause</li> <li>introduces a list after a complete statement</li> <li>introduces quoted text</li> </ul>   |
| '                | apostrophe                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marks missing letters</li> <li>indicates possession</li> </ul>  |
| -                | hyphen                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>links two words in compound modifiers and some compound nouns</li> <li>can be used in fractions and in numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine</li> <li>can join certain prefixes to other words</li> </ul>  |
| " "              | inverted commas                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>can be used before and after direct speech and quoted text</li> <li>pick out a word or phrase in a sentence</li> <li>can be used around titles of short works</li> </ul>  |
| ?                | question mark                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marks the end of a sentence that is a question</li> </ul>   |
| !                | exclamation mark                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>marks the end of a sentence that expresses strong emotions</li> <li>can be used at the end of an interruption to add emphasis</li> </ul>  |
| ()               | parentheses (US)<br>brackets (UK) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>can be used around non-essential information in a sentence</li> <li>can be used around information that provides clarification</li> </ul>   |
| —                | dash                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>can be used in pairs around interruptions</li> <li>marks a range of numbers (5–6 hours)</li> <li>indicates start and end of a route (Paris–Dover rally)</li> </ul>  |
| •                | bullet point                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>indicates a point in a list</li> </ul>  |
| /                | slash                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>can be used to show an alternative instead of using the word “or”</li> </ul>  |

## R4 PRESENT TENSES

The **present simple** is used to make simple statements of fact, to talk about things that happen repeatedly, and to describe things that are always true.

| SUBJECT             | VERB  | REST OF SENTENCE  |
|---------------------|-------|-------------------|
| I / You / We / They | play  | tennis every day. |
| He / She            | plays |                   |

The **present continuous** is used to talk about ongoing actions that are happening in or around the present moment. It is formed with "be" and a present participle.

| SUBJECT         | "BE" | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-----------------|------|--------------------|------------------|
| I               | am   | wearing            | jeans today.     |
| He / She        | is   |                    |                  |
| You / We / They | are  |                    |                  |

## R5 THE IMPERATIVE

**Imperatives** are used to give commands or to make requests. They are formed using the base form of the verb.

| VERB | REST OF SENTENCE |
|------|------------------|
| Turn | right.           |

| "DON'T" | VERB | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------|------|------------------|
| Don't   | turn | right.           |

→ Add "do not" or "don't" to make an imperative negative.



## R6 PAST TENSES

The **past simple** describes single, completed actions in the past. It is the most commonly used past tense in English.

| SUBJECT                         | VERB   | REST OF SENTENCE    |
|---------------------------------|--------|---------------------|
| I / You / He<br>She / We / They | washed | the car on Tuesday. |

The **past continuous** is used in English to talk about actions or events that were ongoing at some time in the past. It is formed with "was" or "were" and a present participle.

| SUBJECT         | "BE" | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE     |
|-----------------|------|--------------------|----------------------|
| I / He / She    | was  | having             | lunch with a friend. |
| You / We / They | were |                    |                      |

## R7 PRESENT PERFECT TENSES

The **present perfect simple** is used to talk about events in the past that still have an effect on the present moment. It is formed with "have" and a past participle.

| SUBJECT             | "HAVE / HAS" | PAST PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| I / You / We / They | have         | arrived         | in London.       |
| He / She            | has          |                 |                  |

The **present perfect continuous** describes an activity that took place over a period of time in the recent past. The activity might just have stopped or might still be happening.

| SUBJECT             | "HAVE / HAS" | "BEEN" | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------------------|--------------|--------|--------------------|------------------|
| I / You / We / They | have         | been   | working            | all day.         |
| He / She            | has          |        |                    |                  |

## R8 PAST PERFECT TENSES

The **past perfect simple** is used to talk about a completed action that took place before another completed action in the past.

| SUBJECT                         | "HAD" | PAST PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE |
|---------------------------------|-------|-----------------|------------------|
| I / You / He<br>She / We / They | had   | gone            | to work already. |

The **past perfect continuous** describes a repeated action or ongoing activity that was taking place before another completed event in the past.

| SUBJECT                         | "HAD BEEN" | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | REST OF SENTENCE       |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| I / You / He<br>She / We / They | had been   | studying           | English for two years. |

## R9 "USED TO" AND "WOULD"

"Used to" is used with the base form of a verb to talk about past habits or past states. "Would" can also be used in this way, but only to talk about past habits.

| SUBJECT                         | "USED TO / WOULD" | BASE FORM | REST OF SENTENCE  |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| I / You / He<br>She / We / They | used to           | play      | tennis every day. |
|                                 | would             |           |                   |

## R10 FUTURE FORMS

The **future with "going to"** is used to talk about decisions that have already been made, or to make predictions when there is evidence in the present moment to support them.

| SUBJECT         | "BE" | "GOING TO" | BASE FORM | REST OF SENTENCE |
|-----------------|------|------------|-----------|------------------|
| I               | am   | going to   | buy       | a new car.       |
| He / She        | is   |            |           |                  |
| You / We / They | are  |            |           |                  |

The future with “will” is used to talk about decisions made at the time of speaking, to make predictions not supported by evidence, to offer to do something, or to make promises.



The future continuous uses “will” or “going to” and “be” with a present participle to describe an event or situation that will be in progress at some point in the future.



## R11 FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect is used to talk about an event that will overlap with, or finish before, another event or point in the future.



The future perfect continuous is used to predict the length of an activity. This tense looks back from that imagined time in the future.





## R12 FORMING NEGATIVES

| TENSE                                  | POSITIVE STATEMENT                        | NEGATIVE STATEMENT                                   |
|--|---|--|
| <b>Present simple with "be"</b>        | I am interested in politics.              | I am <b>not</b> interested in politics.              |
| <b>Present simple with other verbs</b> | I play tennis every day.                  | I <b>do not</b> play tennis every day.               |
| <b>Present continuous</b>              | He is wearing jeans today.                | He is <b>not</b> wearing jeans today.                |
| <b>Past simple with "be"</b>           | She was at the lecture yesterday.         | She was <b>not</b> at the lecture yesterday.         |
| <b>Past simple with other verbs</b>    | We cooked enough food last night.         | We did <b>not</b> cook enough food last night.       |
| <b>Past continuous</b>                 | It was raining this morning.              | It was <b>not</b> raining this morning.              |
| <b>Present perfect simple</b>          | I have seen the new movie.                | I have <b>not</b> seen the new movie.                |
| <b>Present perfect continuous</b>      | I have been waiting for a long time.      | I have <b>not</b> been waiting for a long time.      |
| <b>Past perfect simple</b>             | Sam had cooked dinner for me.             | Sam had <b>not</b> cooked dinner for me.             |
| <b>Past perfect continuous</b>         | Fey had been looking for a new job.       | Fey had <b>not</b> been looking for a new job.       |
| <b>Future with "going to"</b>          | It is going to be sunny tomorrow.         | It is <b>not</b> going to be sunny tomorrow.         |
| <b>Future with "will"</b>              | They will be here before 5pm.             | They will <b>not</b> be here before 5pm.             |
| <b>Future continuous</b>               | Tania will be arriving soon.              | Tania will <b>not</b> be arriving soon.              |
| <b>Future perfect simple</b>           | The play will have finished by 7pm.       | The play will <b>not</b> have finished by 7pm.       |
| <b>Future perfect continuous</b>       | I will have been working for a long time. | I will <b>not</b> have been working for a long time. |

| MODAL VERB      | POSITIVE STATEMENT                  | NEGATIVE STATEMENT                             |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>"Can"</b>    | I can play the piano.               | I <b>cannot</b> play the piano.                |
| <b>"Could"</b>  | I could sing when I was younger.    | I could <b>not</b> sing when I was younger.    |
| <b>"Should"</b> | We should buy a new house.          | We should <b>not</b> buy a new house.          |
| <b>"Might"</b>  | He might come to the party tonight. | He might <b>not</b> come to the party tonight. |
| <b>"Must"</b>   | You must write in pencil.           | You must <b>not</b> write in pencil.           |

## R13 CONTRACTIONS

| PRONOUN | "BE"               | "WILL"              | "WOULD"             | "HAVE"              | "HAD"             |
|---------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| I       | I am → I'm         | I will → I'll       | I would → I'd       | I have → I've       | I had → I'd       |
| you     | you are → you're   | you will → you'll   | you would → you'd   | you have → you've   | you had → you'd   |
| he      | he is → he's       | he will → he'll     | he would → he'd     | he has → he's       | he had → he'd     |
| she     | she is → she's     | she will → she'll   | she would → she'd   | she has → she's     | she had → she'd   |
| it      | it is → it's       | it will → it'll     | it would → it'd     | it has → it's       | it had → it'd     |
| we      | we are → we're     | we will → we'll     | we would → we'd     | we have → we've     | we had → we'd     |
| they    | they are → they're | they will → they'll | they would → they'd | they have → they've | they had → they'd |
| that    | that is → that's   | that will → that'll | that would → that'd | that has → that's   | that had → that'd |
| who     | who is → who's     | who will → who'll   | who would → who'd   | who has → who's     | who had → who'd   |

| VERB AND "NOT" | CONTRACTION |
|----------------|-------------|
| is not         | isn't       |
| are not        | aren't      |
| was not        | wasn't      |
| were not       | weren't     |
| have not       | haven't     |
| has not        | hasn't      |
| had not        | hadn't      |
| will not       | won't       |
| would not      | wouldn't    |
| do not         | don't       |
| does not       | doesn't     |
| did not        | didn't      |
| cannot         | can't       |
| could not      | couldn't    |
| should not     | shouldn't   |
| might not      | mightn't    |
| must not       | mustn't     |

| MODAL VERB AND "HAVE" | CONTRACTION |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| would have            | would've    |
| should have           | should've   |
| could have            | could've    |
| might have            | might've    |
| must have             | must've     |



### COMMON MISTAKES CONTRACTIONS

These contractions are often spelled incorrectly because they look and sound very similar to other words. Contracted forms always use an apostrophe.

You are



You're ✓

Your ✗

They are



They're ✓

Their ✗

There ✗



## R14 PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are words that are used to create or show relationships between different parts of a clause, for example time, place, or reason. They can only be followed by a noun, pronoun, noun phrase, or gerund.

| PREPOSITION           | SAMPLE SENTENCE                                   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>about</b>          | Today's lecture is <b>about</b> the Cold War.     |
| <b>above</b>          | The balloon flew <b>above</b> the city.           |
| <b>after</b>          | We can go to the park <b>after</b> lunch.         |
| <b>against</b>        | I'm <b>against</b> building new houses here.      |
| <b>among</b>          | The document is <b>among</b> these papers.        |
| <b>at</b>             | Let's meet <b>at</b> the bus stop later.          |
| <b>because of</b>     | I'm late <b>because of</b> the trains delays.     |
| <b>before</b>         | Could you get here <b>before</b> lunchtime?       |
| <b>behind</b>         | The park is <b>behind</b> that hedge.             |
| <b>below</b>          | He lives in the apartment <b>below</b> mine.      |
| <b>beneath</b>        | Potatoes grow <b>beneath</b> the ground.          |
| <b>between</b>        | I live <b>between</b> Vancouver and Calgary.      |
| <b>between... and</b> | They'll arrive <b>between</b> 7pm <b>and</b> 8pm. |
| <b>by</b>             | Please pay <b>by</b> the end of the month.        |
| <b>despite</b>        | The café is busy <b>despite</b> the high prices.  |
| <b>during</b>         | Turn off your phone <b>during</b> the show.       |
| <b>due to</b>         | <b>Due to</b> the rain, the game was canceled.    |
| <b>except (for)</b>   | Everyone had arrived <b>except for</b> Liam.      |
| <b>following</b>      | <b>Following</b> losses, the store closed down.   |
| <b>for</b>            | I haven't been back to Delhi <b>for</b> years.    |
| <b>from</b>           | Our new colleague is <b>from</b> Lithuania.       |
| <b>from ... to</b>    | I work <b>from</b> 9am <b>to</b> 5pm.             |
| <b>in</b>             | There's plenty of food <b>in</b> the cupboard.    |

| PREPOSITION         | SAMPLE SENTENCE                                      |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>in front of</b>  | Don't stand <b>in front of</b> the television!       |
| <b>instead of</b>   | Can we have pizza <b>instead of</b> pasta?           |
| <b>like</b>         | This tastes <b>like</b> butter, but it has less fat. |
| <b>near</b>         | We live quite <b>near</b> the airport.               |
| <b>next to</b>      | The supermarket is <b>next to</b> the bank.          |
| <b>on</b>           | I have piano lessons <b>on</b> Tuesdays.             |
| <b>on top of</b>    | Put the vase <b>on top of</b> the bookcase.          |
| <b>out of</b>       | Don't let the cat <b>out of</b> her box yet.         |
| <b>over</b>         | Lots of planes fly <b>over</b> my village.           |
| <b>past</b>         | It's ten <b>past</b> nine. You're late!              |
| <b>regarding</b>    | Let's talk <b>regarding</b> your new job.            |
| <b>since</b>        | I haven't been to Las Vegas <b>since</b> 2007.       |
| <b>thanks to</b>    | <b>Thanks to</b> your efforts, we won a prize.       |
| <b>through</b>      | Shall we walk <b>through</b> the park?               |
| <b>throughout</b>   | I laughed <b>throughout</b> the whole movie.         |
| <b>to</b>           | When are you going <b>to</b> Canada?                 |
| <b>toward</b>       | The child just ran <b>toward</b> his mother.         |
| <b>unlike</b>       | It's <b>unlike</b> Karen to be so rude.              |
| <b>until</b>        | We'll be in Portugal <b>until</b> Friday.            |
| <b>under(neath)</b> | I think the ball's <b>under(neath)</b> the bush.     |
| <b>with</b>         | Will you come <b>with</b> us to the concert?         |
| <b>within</b>       | I ran the marathon <b>within</b> four hours.         |
| <b>without</b>      | I've come out <b>without</b> my phone.               |



## R15 ADJECTIVES AND PREPOSITIONS

Some adjectives have to be followed by a specific preposition.

| ADJECTIVE          | PREPOSITION                  | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <b>afraid</b>      | <b>of</b>                    | It's surprising how many adults are <b>afraid of</b> the dark.                |
| <b>ashamed</b>     | <b>of</b>                    | You should be <b>ashamed of</b> that remark. It was very hurtful.             |
| <b>bored</b>       | <b>with</b>                  | If you're <b>bored with</b> that book, read a different one instead.          |
| <b>close</b>       | <b>to</b>                    | I'm very <b>close to</b> my cousins because we're all similar ages.           |
| <b>crazy</b>       | <b>about</b>                 | All the children at the school are <b>crazy about</b> the same TV show.       |
| <b>different</b>   | <b>from (UK) / than (US)</b> | He's always been <b>different from / than</b> other boys of his age.          |
| <b>excited</b>     | <b>about</b>                 | Max was very <b>excited about</b> his first football game.                    |
| <b>famous</b>      | <b>for</b>                   | She was mainly <b>famous for</b> her career in politics.                      |
| <b>good / bad</b>  | <b>at</b>                    | I've always been very <b>good at</b> geography, but <b>bad at</b> history.    |
| <b>good / bad</b>  | <b>for</b>                   | Too much sugar is <b>bad for</b> us and should be avoided.                    |
| <b>good / bad</b>  | <b>of</b>                    | It was very <b>good of</b> you to look after the children for me.             |
| <b>guilty</b>      | <b>of</b>                    | The vandal was found <b>guilty of</b> criminal damage.                        |
| <b>impressed</b>   | <b>by</b>                    | I've always been <b>impressed by</b> your ability to forgive people.          |
| <b>interested</b>  | <b>in</b>                    | More and more students are <b>interested in</b> media studies.                |
| <b>jealous</b>     | <b>of</b>                    | Older children are often <b>jealous of</b> their younger brothers or sisters. |
| <b>keen</b>        | <b>on</b>                    | My parents aren't very <b>keen on</b> classical music.                        |
| <b>nervous</b>     | <b>of</b>                    | I've been <b>nervous of</b> dogs since one bit me when I was a child.         |
| <b>pleased</b>     | <b>at / with</b>             | Most of the voters were <b>pleased at / with</b> the result of the election.  |
| <b>proud</b>       | <b>of</b>                    | The coach felt very <b>proud of</b> his team when they lifted the trophy.     |
| <b>responsible</b> | <b>for</b>                   | I'm <b>responsible for</b> ensuring that everything runs smoothly.            |
| <b>similar</b>     | <b>to</b>                    | Don't you think she looks very <b>similar to</b> her cousin?                  |
| <b>surprised</b>   | <b>at / by</b>               | We were all <b>surprised at / by</b> the news of your resignation.            |
| <b>suitable</b>    | <b>for</b>                   | The village roads aren't <b>suitable for</b> heavy trucks.                    |
| <b>tired</b>       | <b>of</b>                    | We're <b>tired of</b> city life and would like to move to the country.        |
| <b>wrong</b>       | <b>with</b>                  | Can you tell me what's <b>wrong with</b> my answer?                           |

## R16 NOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS

Some nouns have to be followed by a specific preposition.

| NOUN               | PREPOSITION       | SAMPLE SENTENCE  |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|
| <b>advantage</b>   | <b>in</b>         | The <b>advantage in</b> going last is that you know the target time.           |
| <b>aim</b>         | <b>of</b>         | The <b>aim of</b> this lesson is to understand algebra.                        |
| <b>amazement</b>   | <b>at</b>         | I gasped in <b>amazement at</b> the price tag!                                 |
| <b>anger</b>       | <b>at</b>         | Sally felt a flash of <b>anger at</b> the suggestion that she hadn't tried.    |
| <b>apology</b>     | <b>for</b>        | The referee gave a public <b>apology for</b> his bad decision.                 |
| <b>belief</b>      | <b>in</b>         | We share a strong <b>belief in</b> the goodness of people.                     |
| <b>cause</b>       | <b>of</b>         | Political disagreement is the <b>cause of</b> many family arguments.           |
| <b>danger</b>      | <b>of / in</b>    | The <b>danger in / of</b> trying to please everyone is that you please no one. |
| <b>demand</b>      | <b>for</b>        | There is always an increased <b>demand for</b> ice cream in hot weather.       |
| <b>difficulty</b>  | <b>in</b>         | If you experience any <b>difficulty in</b> breathing, call the doctor.         |
| <b>excitement</b>  | <b>about / at</b> | There was great <b>excitement about / at</b> the treasure they had found.      |
| <b>fear</b>        | <b>of</b>         | Many people experience a <b>fear of</b> flying at some point.                  |
| <b>hope</b>        | <b>of</b>         | The <b>hope of</b> a cure for cancer is growing all the time now.              |
| <b>interest</b>    | <b>in</b>         | Several teachers have expressed an <b>interest in</b> the new course.          |
| <b>lack</b>        | <b>of</b>         | The building project will not go ahead because of a <b>lack of</b> money.      |
| <b>photograph</b>  | <b>of</b>         | Have you seen this <b>photograph of</b> my grandmother's wedding?              |
| <b>point</b>       | <b>in</b>         | There's no <b>point in</b> arguing; we won't change our minds.                 |
| <b>possibility</b> | <b>of</b>         | With this grade, there is the <b>possibility of</b> postgraduate study.        |
| <b>problem</b>     | <b>with</b>       | There was a <b>problem with</b> the delivery of the package.                   |
| <b>reason</b>      | <b>for</b>        | The customer gave poor quality as the <b>reason for</b> her complaint.         |
| <b>response</b>    | <b>to</b>         | We had a terrific <b>response to</b> our survey about salaries.                |
| <b>solution</b>    | <b>to</b>         | I can offer you a simple <b>solution to</b> this problem.                      |
| <b>success</b>     | <b>in / at</b>    | He said that his <b>success in / at</b> the sport was down to his training.    |
| <b>surprise</b>    | <b>at</b>         | There was huge <b>surprise at</b> the result of the election.                  |
| <b>way</b>         | <b>of</b>         | The best <b>way of</b> removing stains is with warm, soapy water.              |



## R17 VERBS AND PREPOSITIONS

Some verbs have to be followed by a specific preposition.

| VERB                          | PREPOSITION      | SAMPLE SENTENCE  |
|-------------------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>accuse (someone)</b>       | <b>of</b>        | The security guard <b>accused the girl of</b> shoplifting.                       |
| <b>apologize</b>              | <b>for</b>       | I'd like to <b>apologize for</b> that last comment.                              |
| <b>appeal</b>                 | <b>to</b>        | The magazine really needs to <b>appeal to</b> teenagers.                         |
| <b>apply</b>                  | <b>for</b>       | Are you going to <b>apply for</b> that job in the newspaper?                     |
| <b>approve</b>                | <b>of</b>        | Matt doesn't <b>approve of</b> his daughter's new boyfriend.                     |
| <b>ask (someone)</b>          | <b>about</b>     | Can you <b>ask someone about</b> the time of the next train?                     |
| <b>believe</b>                | <b>in</b>        | This company doesn't <b>believe in</b> asking you to work overtime.              |
| <b>belong</b>                 | <b>to</b>        | Does this coat <b>belong to</b> you?   |
| <b>blame (someone)</b>        | <b>for</b>       | Don't <b>blame me for</b> being late.  |
| <b>compare (someone)</b>      | <b>to / with</b> | We shouldn't <b>compare the new teacher to / with</b> Mr. Hockly.                |
| <b>concentrate</b>            | <b>on</b>        | I'm finding it difficult to <b>concentrate on</b> this homework.                 |
| <b>congratulate (someone)</b> | <b>on</b>        | Let me be the first to <b>congratulate you on</b> your new baby.                 |
| <b>count</b>                  | <b>on</b>        | We're <b>counting on</b> everyone's support for this new venture.                |
| <b>criticize (someone)</b>    | <b>for</b>       | The politician was <b>criticized for</b> his extravagant lifestyle.              |
| <b>deal</b>                   | <b>with</b>      | This training will help you to <b>deal with</b> difficult members of the public. |
| <b>decide</b>                 | <b>against</b>   | We've <b>decided against</b> floor-to-ceiling closets.                           |
| <b>decide</b>                 | <b>on</b>        | We've <b>decided on</b> pale blue for the bedroom. It looks great.               |
| <b>happen</b>                 | <b>to</b>        | Accidents always seem to <b>happen to</b> Paul. He's very unlucky.               |
| <b>insist</b>                 | <b>on</b>        | The club <b>insists on</b> its members dressing up.                              |
| <b>remind (someone)</b>       | <b>of</b>        | Doesn't Ellie <b>remind you of</b> her mother? She's so like her.                |
| <b>shout</b>                  | <b>at</b>        | There's no point in <b>shouting at</b> the dog. He's deaf!                       |
| <b>stop (someone)</b>         | <b>from</b>      | The yellow band is there to <b>stop people from</b> tripping over the step.      |
| <b>succeed</b>                | <b>in</b>        | Fran <b>succeeded in</b> passing her driving test on the third try.              |
| <b>think</b>                  | <b>about</b>     | Take time to <b>think about</b> the proposal. There's no rush.                   |
| <b>worry</b>                  | <b>about</b>     | It's natural to <b>worry about</b> your children when they're out.               |



## R18 VERBS WITH GERUNDS OR INFINITIVES

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive or a gerund. Some can be followed by either without changing their meaning.

### VERBS FOLLOWED BY AN INFINITIVE

|         |           |          |          |
|---------|-----------|----------|----------|
| advise  | compel    | hope     | promise  |
| afford  | dare      | instruct | refuse   |
| agree   | decide    | intend   | remind   |
| aim     | demand    | invite   | seem     |
| allow   | deserve   | learn    | teach    |
| appear  | enable    | manage   | tell     |
| arrange | expect    | offer    | tend     |
| ask     | encourage | order    | threaten |
| beg     | fail      | persuade | wait     |
| cause   | forbid    | plan     | want     |
| choose  | guarantee | prepare  | warn     |
| claim   | help      | pretend  | wish     |

### VERBS FOLLOWED BY A GERUND

|            |           |          |                    |
|------------|-----------|----------|--------------------|
| admit      | discuss   | involve  | recommend          |
| avoid      | dislike   | justify  | resent             |
| appreciate | enjoy     | keep     | risk               |
| complete   | fancy     | mind     | see someone        |
| consider   | feel like | miss     | spend time / money |
| delay      | finish    | practice | suggest            |
| deny       | imagine   | prevent  | understand         |

### VERBS FOLLOWED BY AN INFINITIVE OR A GERUND (NO CHANGE IN MEANING)

|             |          |      |         |
|-------------|----------|------|---------|
| begin       | cease    | like | prefer  |
| can't bear  | continue | love | propose |
| can't stand | hate     | need | start   |

## R19 COMMON STATE VERBS

State verbs describe states, such as emotions, possession, senses, or thoughts. They are not usually used in continuous tenses.

| MEANING           | STATE VERB           | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|-------------------|----------------------|---|
| feeling / wanting | <b>like / love</b>   | I <b>like / love</b> Italian ice cream.                             |
|                   | <b>need</b>          | We really <b>need</b> to spend more time together as a family.      |
|                   | <b>prefer</b>        | Most people <b>prefer</b> summer to winter.                         |
|                   | <b>want</b>          | The band <b>wants</b> to become famous and make money.              |
| thinking          | <b>believe</b>       | I <b>believe</b> your story, but it is rather unlikely.             |
|                   | <b>doubt</b>         | Lots of people <b>doubt</b> that he can do the job properly.        |
|                   | <b>know</b>          | Do you <b>know</b> where we parked the car?                         |
|                   | <b>mean</b>          | What do you <b>mean</b> when you say you aren't ready?              |
|                   | <b>think</b>         | What do you <b>think</b> about the proposed policy?                 |
| being / existing  | <b>understand</b>    | Could you speak more slowly? I don't <b>understand</b> you.         |
|                   | <b>appear / seem</b> | It <b>appears / seems</b> that the house has already been sold.     |
|                   | <b>exist</b>         | Strange creatures <b>exist</b> at the bottom of the sea.            |
| possessing        | <b>belong</b>        | Excuse me, that book <b>belongs</b> to me.                          |
|                   | <b>have / own</b>    | My neighbor <b>has / owns</b> three classic cars.                   |
|                   | <b>include</b>       | Did you <b>include</b> Lucy in the guest list?                      |
| sensing           | <b>feel</b>          | Does your leg <b>feel</b> better today?                             |
|                   | <b>hear</b>          | I can <b>hear</b> you, but I'm not sure what you're saying.         |
|                   | <b>hurt</b>          | My arm really <b>hurts</b> . I think I should go to see the doctor. |
|                   | <b>see</b>           | Can you <b>see</b> the blackbird in the bush over there?            |
|                   | <b>feel</b>          | This rug <b>feels</b> so soft. It would be lovely to walk on.       |
| having a quality  | <b>smell</b>         | Something <b>smells</b> delicious. Is it the soup?                  |
|                   | <b>sound</b>         | That <b>sounds</b> like thunder, or is it just fireworks?           |
|                   | <b>taste</b>         | This milk <b>tastes</b> a bit sour. I think it's gone bad.          |

## R20 SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs can be separated by the object of the verb. In these cases, the verb goes first, then the object, then the particle. This separation is usually optional. However, if the object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, then the phrasal verb must be separated by the pronoun.

| PHRASAL VERB         | DEFINITION  | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|----------------------|---|---|
| <b>bring up</b>      | look after a child until he / she is an adult       | Samira's grandparents <b>brought</b> her <b>up</b> .                    |
| <b>bring up</b>      | mention something                                   | You should <b>bring</b> any problems <b>up</b> with your manager.       |
| <b>carry out</b>     | perform an action                                   | If you give me instructions, I'll <b>carry</b> them <b>out</b> .        |
| <b>clean up</b>      | clean something thoroughly                          | Can you help me <b>clean</b> the kitchen <b>up</b> please?              |
| <b>do up</b>         | restore / decorate something                        | We've bought an old house and we're going to <b>do</b> it <b>up</b> .   |
| <b>fill in / out</b> | write information in a form                         | Could you just <b>fill</b> this short form <b>in / out</b> for me, sir? |
| <b>fill up</b>       | make something completely full                      | I'm just going to the gas station to <b>fill</b> the car <b>up</b> .    |
| <b>get back</b>      | find / get something after it has been lost / taken | The police <b>got</b> my car <b>back</b> after it had been stolen.      |
| <b>give up</b>       | stop doing something                                | Smoking is really bad for you. You should <b>give</b> it <b>up</b> .    |
| <b>hand out</b>      | distribute something                                | Be quiet! I'm about to <b>hand</b> the exam papers <b>out</b> .         |
| <b>leave out</b>     | not include something / someone                     | I can't believe that they <b>left</b> you <b>out</b> of the team!       |
| <b>let out</b>       | release something / someone                         | The school's going to <b>let</b> the children <b>out</b> early today.   |
| <b>look up</b>       | find information, e.g. in a dictionary              | When does the show start? Can you <b>look</b> it <b>up</b> for me?      |
| <b>make up</b>       | invent something                                    | I didn't believe Dave's story. I think he <b>made</b> it <b>up</b> .    |
| <b>pick up</b>       | take hold of something and lift it                  | <b>Pick</b> that paper bag <b>up</b> !                                  |
| <b>pull down</b>     | demolish / destroy something                        | They're going to <b>pull</b> all those old apartments <b>down</b> .     |
| <b>put off</b>       | delay doing something                               | I'm going to <b>put</b> the party <b>off</b> until Dad feels better.    |
| <b>set up</b>        | arrange / organize something                        | We're helping to <b>set</b> the music festival <b>up</b> .              |
| <b>take up</b>       | start a new hobby                                   | I never thought I'd <b>take</b> birdwatching <b>up</b> , but I love it! |
| <b>throw away</b>    | get rid of something                                | We never <b>throw</b> any food <b>away</b> .                            |
| <b>turn down</b>     | refuse / reject something / someone                 | It was a great job offer but I <b>turned</b> it <b>down</b> .           |
| <b>turn on</b>       | start an electrical device                          | Quick! <b>Turn</b> the TV <b>on</b> . The final is about to start.      |
| <b>wake up</b>       | make someone stop sleeping                          | Will you <b>wake</b> me <b>up</b> at 8am if I oversleep?                |
| <b>write down</b>    | write something on paper                            | Could you <b>write</b> your email address <b>down</b> for me?           |



## R21 INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated. Their object always comes after them, even if it is a pronoun.

| PHRASAL VERB               | DEFINITION                                       | SAMPLE SENTENCE  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| <b>check in / into</b>     | announce your arrival                            | Guests may <b>check into</b> the hotel from 4pm.               |
| <b>come across</b>         | find by chance                                   | I <b>came across</b> some old photographs while cleaning up.   |
| <b>cut back on</b>         | reduce / decrease something                      | The government wants to <b>cut back on</b> spending.           |
| <b>deal with</b>           | handle / manage someone or something             | We learned how to <b>deal with</b> difficult customers.        |
| <b>do without</b>          | manage without something                         | We can <b>do without</b> a vacation this year.                 |
| <b>get along / on with</b> | have a good relationship                         | I find it easy to <b>get along / on with</b> people.           |
| <b>get on / off</b>        | walk / climb on or off a bus, train, plane, etc. | Please take care when you <b>get off</b> the plane.            |
| <b>get out of</b>          | leave a car / taxi, etc.                         | Be careful when you <b>get out of</b> the car.                 |
| <b>get over</b>            | recover (from an illness)                        | It took me a long time to <b>get over</b> the last cold I had. |
| <b>get through</b>         | finish something successfully                    | The trial was very stressful, but we <b>got through</b> it.    |
| <b>go over</b>             | check or examine something                       | Remember to <b>go over</b> your answers carefully.             |
| <b>go with</b>             | match, suit                                      | Does this scarf <b>go with</b> my jacket?                      |
| <b>hear from</b>           | get news from somebody                           | Have you <b>heard from</b> your cousins recently?              |
| <b>keep up with</b>        | keep the same pace as others                     | Slow down! I can't <b>keep up with</b> you!                    |
| <b>look after</b>          | take care of someone                             | Marie <b>looks after</b> her younger sister after school.      |
| <b>look for</b>            | try to find, search                              | Peter is going to <b>look for</b> a job when he leaves school. |
| <b>look forward to</b>     | be excited about something in the future         | My children are <b>looking forward to</b> the holidays.        |
| <b>look into</b>           | examine something carefully                      | The police are <b>looking into</b> the case.                   |
| <b>look up to</b>          | respect and admire someone                       | Lots of young people <b>look up to</b> sports stars.           |
| <b>run into</b>            | meet someone by chance                           | I <b>ran into</b> Dave earlier. I hadn't seen him for ages.    |
| <b>run out of</b>          | not have any left                                | We've <b>run out of</b> food. Let's go to the store.           |
| <b>stand for</b>           | mean, represent                                  | What do the initials UNICEF <b>stand for</b> ?                 |
| <b>take after</b>          | be similar to an older relative                  | Sally's so stubborn. She really <b>takes after</b> her mother. |
| <b>turn into</b>           | become something else                            | You can sleep here. The sofa <b>turns into</b> a bed.          |

## R22 COMMONLY CONFUSED WORDS

Some words in English sound the same or very similar, but mean different things. It is essential to spell the words correctly to achieve the correct meaning in a sentence.

### accept / except

I **accept** your apology.  
Everyone was on the list **except** for me.

### adverse / averse

She was feeling unwell due to the **adverse** effects of her medication.  
He was lazy and **averse** to playing sport.

### aisle / isle

The bride walked down the **aisle**.  
They visited an **isle** near the coast of Scotland.

### aloud / allowed

She read the book **aloud**.  
He was **allowed** to choose which book to read.

### amoral / immoral

Her **amoral** attitude meant that she didn't care if her actions were wrong.  
He was fired from the firm for **immoral** conduct.

### appraise / apprise

The manager needed to **appraise** the employee's skills.  
The lawyer **apprised** the defendant of his rights.

### assent / ascent

He nodded his **assent**.  
They watched the **ascent** of the balloon.

### aural / oral

The **aural** test required her to listen.  
The dentist performed an **oral** examination.

### bare / bear

The trees were stripped **bare**.  
The large **bear** roamed the woods.

### break / brake

The chocolate was easy to **break** apart.  
The car didn't **brake** fast enough.

### broach / brooch

He decided to **broach** the subject for discussion.  
She wore a pretty **brooch**.

### cereal / serial

He ate a bowl of **cereal** for breakfast.  
She found the **serial** number on her computer.

### complement / compliment

The colors **complement** each other well.  
He paid her a **compliment** by telling her she was pretty.

### cue / queue

The actor waited for his **cue** before walking on stage.  
The checkout **queue** was very long.

### desert / dessert

The **desert** is extremely hot and dry.  
She decided to have cake for **dessert**.

### draught / draft

There was a **draught** coming from under the door.  
He had written a **draft** of the letter.

### pore / pour

I could see every **pore** on his nose.  
She helped **pour** the drinks at the party.

### principle / principal

The man believed in strong **principles**.  
He was given the role of the **principal** character.

### stationary / stationery

The aircraft landed and remained **stationary**.  
She looked in the **stationery** cupboard for a pen.

## R23 SPELLING RULES

All present participles and gerunds are formed by adding "-ing" to the base form of the verb. The spelling of some base forms changes slightly before adding "-ing."

| BASE FORM     | RULE   | GERUND            |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| <b>choose</b> | Remove the silent "-e" before adding "-ing."   | <b>choosing</b>   |
| <b>tie</b>    | Change "-ie" to "y" before adding "-ing."  | <b>tying</b>      |
| <b>forget</b> | Double last letter if word ends with stressed syllable of consonant-vowel-consonant. | <b>forgetting</b> |

Regular past participles are made with the base form of the verb plus "-ed." The spelling of some of these base forms changes slightly before adding "-ed."

| BASE FORM   | RULE   | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|-------------|--|-----------------|
| <b>like</b> | Last letter is "-e," so just add "-d"  | <b>liked</b>    |
| <b>cry</b>  | Change consonant plus "-y" to "-ied."  | <b>cried</b>    |
| <b>drop</b> | Double last letter if word ends with stressed syllable of consonant-vowel-consonant. | <b>dropped</b>  |

## R24 IRREGULAR PLURALS

Most plurals in English are formed by adding "-s" to the end of the singular noun. However, some plurals are irregular, either taking a different ending, or not changing at all.

| SINGULAR | PLURAL            |
|----------|-------------------|
| aircraft | <b>aircraft</b>   |
| analysis | <b>analyses</b>   |
| appendix | <b>appendices</b> |
| axis     | <b>axes</b>       |
| bureau   | <b>bureaux</b>    |
| cactus   | <b>cacti</b>      |
| child    | <b>children</b>   |
| crisis   | <b>crises</b>     |
| deer     | <b>deer</b>       |
| fish     | <b>fish</b>       |
| foot     | <b>feet</b>       |
| formula  | <b>formulae</b>   |
| fungus   | <b>fungi</b>      |
| leaf     | <b>leaves</b>     |
| loaf     | <b>loaves</b>     |

| SINGULAR   | PLURAL           |
|------------|------------------|
| man        | <b>men</b>       |
| medium     | <b>media</b>     |
| mouse      | <b>mice</b>      |
| ox         | <b>oxen</b>      |
| person     | <b>people</b>    |
| phenomenon | <b>phenomena</b> |
| scarf      | <b>scarves</b>   |
| series     | <b>series</b>    |
| sheep      | <b>sheep</b>     |
| species    | <b>species</b>   |
| tooth      | <b>teeth</b>     |
| vertebra   | <b>vertebrae</b> |
| wife       | <b>wives</b>     |
| wolf       | <b>wolves</b>    |
| woman      | <b>women</b>     |



## R25 LINKING WORDS

Linking words are used to link two or more words, phrases or clauses together. They are usually conjunctions, but can also be adverbial phrases.

| LINKING WORD                  | USE  | SAMPLE SENTENCE  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>although / even though</b> | adds a contrast                                  | The show went ahead, <b>even though</b> it was raining.            |
| <b>anyway</b>                 | contrasts with something just said               | I knew the climb would be hard, but I did it <b>anyway</b> .       |
| <b>and / both... and</b>      | links two similar words, phrases, or clauses     | I can speak <b>(both)</b> French <b>and</b> English.               |
| <b>as</b>                     | gives a reason for an action                     | The experiment failed <b>as</b> the sample was too old.            |
| <b>as long as</b>             | adds a condition                                 | You can go out <b>as long as</b> you come home by 11pm.            |
| <b>as well as</b>             | adds further information                         | Mint is used in savory dishes <b>as well as</b> sweet ones.        |
| <b>because</b>                | gives a reason for an action                     | I was late again <b>because</b> the train was delayed.             |
| <b>but</b>                    | links two contrasting words, phrases, or clauses | He's quite heavy <b>but</b> he's very fast on his feet.            |
| <b>consequently</b>           | gives a result of a previous action              | The vote was close. <b>Consequently</b> , there was a recount.     |
| <b>furthermore</b>            | adds supporting information                      | I love this cream. <b>Furthermore</b> , it's great for dry skin.   |
| <b>however</b>                | adds contrasting information                     | I'd love to come. <b>However</b> , I'm away that weekend.          |
| <b>if</b>                     | adds a condition                                 | These plants will grow better <b>if</b> you water them daily.      |
| <b>in addition</b>            | adds information                                 | I go to the gym a lot. <b>In addition</b> , I run 20km a week.     |
| <b>in order to</b>            | gives a purpose for an action                    | We moved here <b>in order to</b> be closer to work.                |
| <b>moreover</b>               | adds supporting information                      | It's quicker to travel by plane. <b>Moreover</b> , it's cheaper.   |
| <b>neither... nor</b>         | links two things that are not true or possible   | These instructions are <b>neither</b> helpful <b>nor</b> legible.  |
| <b>or / either... or</b>      | links two alternatives                           | We can <b>(either)</b> go to the cinema <b>or</b> have a meal.     |
| <b>since</b>                  | gives a reason for an action                     | <b>Since</b> dessert is included, we might as well have one.       |
| <b>so</b>                     | gives a reason for an action                     | It was raining, <b>so</b> we stayed indoors.                       |
| <b>so that</b>                | gives a purpose for an action                    | I'm saving money <b>so that</b> I can buy a house.                 |
| <b>therefore</b>              | gives a result of an action                      | It's a very clear night. <b>Therefore</b> , you can see the stars. |
| <b>unless</b>                 | adds a condition                                 | You won't be able to travel <b>unless</b> you have a visa.         |
| <b>whereas</b>                | adds a contrast                                  | My mother likes tea, <b>whereas</b> my father prefers coffee.      |
| <b>yet</b>                    | adds a contrast                                  | Dean is a good musician, <b>yet</b> he can't read music.           |

## R26 TIME WORDS

English has lots of words to talk about when things happen. They usually act as prepositions, conjunctions, or adverbs.

| TIME WORD          | USE  | SAMPLE SENTENCE   |
|--------------------|--|---|
| <b>about to</b>    | shows an event will happen very soon   | The train on platform 6 is <b>about to</b> leave.                   |
| <b>after</b>       | shows an event in the main clause follows another event                                | Wash your hands <b>after</b> you've been gardening.                 |
| <b>already</b>     | shows an event has happened before another event or a particular time                  | Don't worry, I've <b>already</b> ordered some food.                 |
| <b>as</b>          | indicates an event happens at the same time as another event                           | It started raining <b>as</b> we were leaving the house.             |
| <b>as soon as</b>  | indicates an event (in the main clause) happens straight after another event           | Please call us <b>as soon as</b> you arrive in New York.            |
| <b>before</b>      | shows an event (in the main clause) precedes another event                             | I was a teacher <b>before</b> I became a politician.                |
| <b>by the time</b> | shows an event precedes or happens at the same time as an event in the main clause     | <b>By the time</b> we arrived, the game had started.                |
| <b>eventually</b>  | shows an event happened after a long time  | It was a long wait, but <b>eventually</b> our exam results arrived. |
| <b>finally</b>     | indicates an event at the end of a list / sequence, or that happened after a long time | I'd like to thank my family, my team, and <b>finally</b> my fans.   |
| <b>in the end</b>  | shows an event happened after a long time  | Joe took the exam three times, but <b>in the end</b> he passed.     |
| <b>just</b>        | shows an event happened very recently  | Quick! I've <b>just</b> seen something really amazing!              |
| <b>later</b>       | indicates an event after the time of speaking or the time that is being talked about   | I can't take you to the mall now. We'll go there <b>later</b> .     |
| <b>meanwhile</b>   | indicates an event happens at the same time as another event                           | The show started at 8. <b>Meanwhile</b> , we went for dinner.       |
| <b>next</b>        | indicates an event in a sequence   | Stir the melted chocolate. <b>Next</b> , pour it into the cake pan. |
| <b>once</b>        | indicates an event starts to happen (in the main clause) after another one             | <b>Once</b> you've cleaned the stove, wipe all the handles.         |
| <b>since</b>       | shows an event continuing from a past time to the present                              | I haven't seen you <b>since</b> we were in school!                  |
| <b>still</b>       | shows an event at the time of speaking started in the past and is continuing           | Are they <b>still</b> repairing the main road?                      |
| <b>then</b>        | indicates an event in a sequence, or one event that happens after another              | We went to the cinema, <b>then</b> we went out for a meal.          |
| <b>until</b>       | shows an event continues up to the time of another event                               | I won't stop saving <b>until</b> I've bought a new car.             |
| <b>when</b>        | shows an event happens at the same time as or after another event                      | Could you call me <b>when</b> all the salespeople have arrived?     |
| <b>while</b>       | indicates an event happens at the same time as another event                           | Please don't interrupt me <b>while</b> I'm trying to concentrate.   |
| <b>yet</b>         | shows an expected event has not happened, or asks whether it has happened              | Have you finished the sales report <b>yet</b> ?                     |

# Glossary

## absolute adjective

A word that describes a quality which cannot be changed or modified, e.g. **unique**.

## abstract noun

A word that refers to a quality rather than a thing or person, e.g. **beauty**, **hope**.

## action verb (dynamic verb)

A type of verb that describes an action, e.g. **run**, and can be used in the simple and **continuous** tenses. see also **state verb**

## active voice

Indicates that the person or thing who is doing the action is the **subject** of the **verb**. see also **passive voice**

## adjective

A word that describes a **noun** or **pronoun**, e.g. **quick**.

## adverb

A word that describes a **verb**, **adjective**, or another adverb, e.g. **quickly**.

## adverb of degree

An adverb that tells you "how much," e.g. **extremely**.

## adverb of frequency

An adverb that tells you "how often," e.g. **usually**.

## adverb of manner

An adverb that tells you "how," e.g. **badly**.

## adverbial

A phrase that is used as an adverb, e.g. **on the table** (expressing place), **tomorrow evening** (expressing time).

## agent

The person or thing that does the action. The **subject** of the verb in an **active** clause, but not in a **passive** clause.

## agreement

When the **verb** form is correct for the **subject**, e.g. **He is** = **singular** subject + singular verb.

## apostrophe

The punctuation mark that shows either belonging, e.g. **John's cat**, or a contraction e.g. **I'm happy**.

## article

The words **a**, **an**, and **the**, which show whether something is general or specific. see also **zero article**

## auxiliary verb

A verb which is used with another verb, e.g. to form **tenses**, most commonly **be**, **do**, and **have**. see also **main verb**

## backchanneling

The words and noises that a listener makes to show they are listening, e.g. **Really?**

## backshift

In **reported speech**, when the **verb** moves back one tense into the past, e.g. **present simple** to **past simple**.

## base form (bare infinitive)

The most basic form of a **verb**, e.g. **be**, **run**, **write**. see also **infinitive**

## cardinal number

The numbers used for counting, e.g. **one**, **two**. see also **ordinal number**

## classifying adjective

An adjective that describes the type of the **noun** that it defines, e.g. in **medical student**, "medical" describes the type of student.

## clause

A group of words that contains a **verb**.

## closed question

A question that can be answered with "yes" or "no," e.g. **Are you English?** see also **open question**

## collective noun

A **singular** noun that refers to a group of people or things, e.g. **family**, **team**.

## comparative adjective

An adjective that compares one thing or group of things with another, e.g. **better**. see also **superlative adjective**

## complement

The word or phrase that comes after **verbs** such as **be**, **become**, **seem**, **appear**, e.g. "happy" in **She's happy**. see also **linking verb**

## complex preposition

A preposition that contains two or more words, e.g. **next to**, **because of**.

## compound noun

A noun that contains two or more words, e.g. **post office**.

## compound tense

A **tense** which uses an **auxiliary verb**, e.g. the **present perfect**: **has done**.

## concrete noun

A noun that refers to something you can touch, see, hear, smell, or taste, e.g. **table**, **teacher**.

## conditional

The verb structure used when one event or situation depends on another event or situation happening first.

## conjunction

A word that links two words or groups of words, e.g. **and**, **because**, **if**.

## consonant

Most letters / sounds in English, but not **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**. **y** can operate as a consonant or a **vowel**.

## continuous (progressive)

Continuous **tenses** express actions that are in progress at a specific time, e.g. **I'm writing**.

## contraction

Two words that are joined with an **apostrophe** to form one word, e.g. **we're**.

## conversational ellipsis

When words are left out in **informal** conversation, e.g. **[Do you] Want a cup of coffee?**

## coordinating conjunction

A word that links two **clauses** of equal importance, e.g. **and**, **but**, **or**. see also **subordinating conjunction**

## countable

A **noun** that can be counted, e.g. **one book**, **two books**. see also **uncountable**

## defining relative clause

A clause that starts with a **relative pronoun** (such as **who** or **which**). It gives information that defines something in the **main clause**. see also **non-defining relative clause**

## definite article

The word **the**, which specifies which noun that follows it, e.g. **the house in the woods**. see also **indefinite article**

## demonstrative determiner / pronoun

Words that specify a **noun** as closer to (**this**, **these**) or more distant from (**that**, **those**) the speaker, e.g. **This watch is cheaper than that one in the window**.

## dependent preposition

A preposition that always follows a particular **verb**, **noun**, or **adjective**, e.g. **afraid of**.

## determiner

A word that comes before a **noun** and identifies it, e.g. **the book**, **this book**.



### direct object

The person or thing affected by the action of the **verb**, e.g. "him" in **We followed him**. see also **indirect object**

### direct question

A question without an introductory phrase, e.g. **What time is it?**

### direct speech

The words that are actually said to make a statement or question, e.g. **It's raining**.

### discourse marker

A word or phrase that is used in conversation to direct the discussion or add comment, e.g. **Well, Right**.

### double object verb

A verb that has two objects, e.g. "me" and "the phone" in **Give me the phone**.

### dummy subject

The word "it" used without referring to a noun, e.g. **It's five o'clock**.

### -ed adjective

An adjective that describes how something is affected, e.g. **bored, excited**. see also **-ing adjective**

### ellipsis

When words or phrases are left out of a clause, usually because they don't need to be repeated, e.g. **He got up and [he] had a shower**.

### emphasis

When a word is said more loudly because it is more important. see also **stress**

### extreme adjective

An adjective that has a stronger meaning than a **gradable adjective** with a similar meaning, e.g. **freezing** is the extreme adjective for **cold**.

### first conditional

A sentence with "if" that describes a possible future situation that depends on another situation, e.g. **If it rains, I'll stay here**.

### focus

Part of a **sentence** that is moved to the beginning because it is more important.

### formal

Formal language is used in situations where you don't know the people very well, or when you want to keep social distance. see also **informal**

### future continuous

A **tense** that is formed with **will be** and the **present participle**. It expresses an action that will be in progress at a point in the future.

### future perfect

A **tense** that is formed with **will have** and the **past participle**, e.g. **will have done**. It expresses an action that will be complete at a point in the future.

### future perfect continuous

A **tense** that is formed with **will have been** and the **present participle**, e.g. **will have been doing**. It expresses an ongoing action that will be complete at a point in the future.

### gerund (verbal noun)

The **-ing** form of a **verb**, when it is used as a noun, e.g. **No smoking**.

### gradable adjective

An adjective that can be used with **adverbs of degree** (such as **very**) and can be used in the **comparative** form. see also **non-gradable adjective**

### grading adverb

An **adverb of degree** that can be used with **gradable adjectives**. see also **non-grading adverb**

### hedging

Words or phrases that make a speaker seem less certain or direct, e.g. **apparently, I think**.

### imperative

An order to someone, e.g. **Stop!** The imperative is often a **verb** on its own in its **base form**.

### indefinite article

The words **a** and **an**, which come before **nouns** when it doesn't matter which noun is being referred to, or if it is being mentioned for the first time, e.g. **Can I borrow a pen?** see also **definite article**

### indefinite pronoun

A pronoun that does not refer to a specific person or thing, e.g. **someone, nothing**.

### indirect object

The person or thing that is affected by the action of a **transitive verb**, but is not the direct object, e.g. "the dog" in **I gave the ball to the dog**. see also **direct object**

### indirect question

A question that begins with a polite phrase, e.g. **Can you tell me what time it is?**

### infinitive

The **base form** of a **verb**, often with the infinitive marker "to," e.g. **to go, to run**.

### infinitive clause

A clause whose verb is in the **infinitive** form, e.g. **It's important to complete the form in full**.

### informal

Informal language is used in situations where you know the people well and feel relaxed. see also **formal**

### -ing adjective

An adjective that describes the effect something has, e.g. **boring, exciting**. see also **-ed adjective**

### inseparable phrasal verb

A **phrasal verb** that is always used with the **particle**, e.g. **I take after my mother**. see also **separable phrasal verb**

### intransitive verb

A verb that does not take a **direct object**. see also **transitive verb**

### introductory "it"

"It is" used at the start of a **sentence** to refer to a general idea, e.g. **It is difficult to ski**.

### inversion

When positions of two parts of a **clause** swap around, e.g. the **subject** and the **verb** in questions.

### irregular

A word that behaves differently from most words like it, e.g. **men** is an irregular **plural noun**. see also **regular**

### linking verb

A verb that links two parts of a **clause** (the **subject** and **complement**) rather than describing an action, such as **be, seem, become**, e.g. **She is really angry**.

### main clause

A **clause** that could form a complete **sentence** on its own. see also **subordinate clause**

### main verb

The verb in a group of verbs that carries the meaning, e.g. "ride" in **I can ride a bike**.

### modal verb

A type of **auxiliary verb** that is used with a **main verb** to show ideas like ability and permission.

### modifier

A word that adds information to another word, e.g. "really" in **really interesting**.

### negative

A **clause** that contains a word like **not** or **never**.

### negative adverbial

A phrase that acts as an **adverb** and has a negative meaning, e.g. **not only**, **not until**.

### non-defining relative clause

A clause that starts with a **relative pronoun** (such as **who** or **which**). It gives non-essential information about the **main clause**.  
see also **defining relative clause**

### non-gradable adjective

An adjective that cannot be used in the **comparative** form and can only be used with certain **adverbs of degree** (such as **absolutely**).  
see also **gradable adjective**

### non-grading adverb

An **adverb of degree** that can be used with **non-gradable adjectives**.

### noun

A word that refers to a person, place, or thing.

### noun phrase

A **noun**, **pronoun**, or a number of words that are linked to a noun, e.g. **the blue house**.

### object

A **noun** or **pronoun** that follows a **verb** or a **preposition**.

### object pronoun

A pronoun that usually follows a **verb** or a **preposition**, e.g. **me**, **them**.

### object question

A question where the question word is the **object**, e.g. "What" in **What did you say?**

### open question

A question that cannot be answered with "yes" or "no" and starts with a question word (such as **when** or **who**).  
see also **closed question**

### ordinal number

The numbers used for ordering, e.g. **first**, **second**.  
see also **cardinal number**

### participle

The form of a **verb** used to make **compound tenses**.  
see also **past participle** and **present participle**

### particle

A word that follows a **verb** to form a **phrasal verb**.

### passive voice

Indicates that the person or thing affected by the action is the **subject** of the **verb**.  
see also **active voice**

### past continuous

A **tense** that is formed with **was** or **were** and the **present participle**, e.g. **was doing**.  
It expresses an ongoing action in the past.

### past participle

The **participle** form of a **verb** that is used to make **perfect tenses** and the passive, e.g. **walked**, **done**, **eaten**.

### past perfect

A **tense** that is formed with **had** and the **past participle**, e.g. **had done**. It expresses a completed action that happened before another action or state in the past.

### past perfect continuous

A **tense** that is formed with **had been** and the **present participle**, e.g. **had been doing**. It expresses an ongoing action that happened before another action or state in the past.

### past simple

A **tense** that consists only of the past form of a **verb**, e.g. **walked**, **said**, **ate**. It expresses a completed action in the past.

### perfect

Perfect **tenses** express a link between two times, e.g. the **present perfect** links the past with the present.

### person

The form of a **pronoun** that shows who is speaking (**I**, **we**),

who is being spoken to (**you**) or who or what is being mentioned (**he**, **she**, **it**, **they**).  
**Verbs** also reflect person, e.g. **am** is the first person singular form of **be**.

### personal pronoun

A word that refers to people or things that have already been mentioned, e.g. **he**, **they**.

### phrasal verb

A combination of **verb** + **particle** that is always used together and has a different meaning from the verb on its own, e.g. **make up** meaning "invent."

### plural

The form of a word used when there is more than one of something, e.g. **books**, **they**.  
see also **singular**

### positive

A **clause** that expresses what someone or something is or does. It does not contain a negative word.  
see also **negative**

### possessive determiner

A word that comes before a **noun** and shows belonging, e.g. **my**, **our**, **his**.

### possessive pronoun

A word that replaces a **noun** and shows belonging, e.g. **mine**, **ours**, **his**.

### prefix

Letters at the beginning of a word that change its meaning, e.g. "re-" in **replace**.  
see also **suffix**

### preposition

A short word that links two **nouns** or **pronouns** to show a relationship, e.g. **to**, **at**, **with**, **from**.

### prepositional phrase

A phrase that starts with a **preposition**, e.g. **on the bus**, **at five o'clock**.

### present continuous

A **tense** that is formed with the present of **be** and the **present participle**, e.g. **is doing**.  
It expresses an ongoing action in the present.

### present participle

The **participle** form of a **verb** that is used to make **continuous tenses**, e.g. **walking**, **doing**.

### present perfect

A **tense** that is formed with the present of **have** and the **past participle**, e.g. **have done**.  
It expresses an action that started in the past and is still continuing or that happened in the past but has a result in the present.

### present perfect continuous

A **tense** that is formed with **has / have been** and the **present participle**, e.g. **has / have been doing**. It expresses an ongoing action that started in the past and is still continuing.

### present simple

A **tense** that consists only of the present form of a **verb**, e.g. **walk**, **say**, **eat**. It expresses a general truth about the present.

### pronoun

A word that replaces a **noun**, when the noun has already been mentioned, e.g. **it**, **that**.

### proper noun

A noun that is the name of a person, place, day, etc., e.g. **Maria**, **France**, **Sunday**.

### quantifier

A word that usually comes before a **noun** and expresses a quantity or amount, e.g. **several**, **many**, **much**.

### question

A **sentence** that asks for something, usually information. The **verb** usually comes before the **subject**.

### question word

A word is used to start **open questions**, e.g. **What, Which, Who, Why, How**.

### question tag

A short phrase that makes a **statement** into a **question**, e.g. "isn't it" in **It's hot today, isn't it?**

### reflexive pronoun

A word that refers to the **subject** of the **clause**, when the subject and **object** are the same, e.g. **myself**.

### regular

A word that behaves in the same way as most words like it, e.g. **books** is a regular **plural noun** and **waited** is a regular **past simple** form.  
see also **irregular**

### relative clause

A clause that gives information about the **subject** or **object** of the **main clause**.

### relative pronoun

A word that introduces a **relative clause**, e.g. **who**, **that**, **which**.

### reported question

A question that is repeated after it was actually asked, often by another person, e.g. **She asked if the bus was full**.

### reported speech

**Statements** and **questions** that are repeated after they were actually said, often by another person, e.g. **He said the bus was full**.

### reporting verb

A verb that introduces **reported speech**, e.g. **say, tell**.

### root

The part of a word to which a suffix or prefix is added, e.g. "employ" is the root of **employable**.

### second conditional

A sentence with "if" that describes an imaginary future situation, or an impossible present situation, e.g. **If I were you, I'd take an umbrella**.

### sentence

A group of one or more **clauses**.

### separable phrasal verb

A **phrasal verb** that can be used with the **particle** after a noun or pronoun, e.g. **bring the subject up / bring it up**.  
see also **inseparable phrasal verb**

### short answer

An answer to a closed **question** that only uses the **subject** and **auxiliary verb**, e.g. **Yes, I do**.

### short question

A question with just an **auxiliary verb** and **subject**, which is used to show interest in a conversation, e.g. **Is it?**

### simple

Simple **tenses** are formed with a **main verb** only; they don't need an **auxiliary verb** in their **positive** forms.

### singular

The form of a word that is used to refer to just one person or thing, e.g. **book**.  
see also **plural**

### stalling

Using words or short phrases in conversation to give yourself time to think about what to say, e.g. **Let's see...**

### state verb (stative verb)

A type of verb that describes situations, thoughts, or feelings, e.g. **seem, think, like**.  
see also **action verb**

### statement

A **sentence** that offers information, i.e. not a **question** or an **imperative**.

### stress

Saying one **syllable** in a word, or one word in a **sentence**, more strongly than the others.  
see also **emphasis**

### subject

The person / thing / place, etc. that usually comes before the **verb** in a **clause**.

### subject pronoun

A word that replaces a **noun** as the subject of a **clause**, e.g. **I, she, they**.

### subject question

A question where the question word is the **subject**, e.g. "Who" in **Who invited you?**  
see also **object question**

### subordinate clause

A **clause** which is dependent on the **main clause**, usually introduced by a **subordinating conjunction**.

### subordinating conjunction

A word that links two **clauses** that are not of equal importance, i.e. a **subordinate clause** to a **main clause**, e.g. **because, if**.  
see also **coordinating conjunction**

### substitution

The use of a word to replace another, e.g. "He" in **He's in the kitchen**.

### suffix

Letters at the end of a word that change its meaning, e.g. "-able" in **enjoyable**.  
see also **prefix**

### superlative adjective

An adjective that indicates the most extreme of a group of things, e.g. **best**.  
see also **comparative adjective**

### syllable

Every word is made up of a number of syllables, each of which contain a **vowel** sound, e.g. **teach** (one syllable), **teacher** (two syllables).

### tense

The form of a **verb** that shows the time of the action, e.g. **present simple, past simple**.

### third conditional

A sentence with "if" that describes an impossible past situation and its impossible result, e.g. **If I had studied harder, I would have passed the exam**.

### time marker

A word or phrase that indicates a time, e.g. **now, at the moment, tomorrow**.

### transitive verb

A verb that takes a **direct object**.  
see also **intransitive verb**

### uncountable

A **noun** that cannot be counted, e.g. **water, money**.  
see also **countable**

### verb

A word that refers to a situation or an action, e.g. **stay, write**.

### vowel

The English letters **a, e, i, o, u**.  
see also **consonant**

### word class

Shows the function of a word in a sentence, e.g. **noun, verb, adjective** are all word classes.

### word order

The position that different words have in a **clause**, e.g. the **subject** usually comes before the **verb**, and **adjectives of opinion** come before **adjectives of fact**.

### zero article

When there is no article before **plural** or **uncountable nouns**.

### zero conditional

A **sentence** with "if" or "when" that describes a present situation or a regular action, e.g. **If it rains, the roads flood**.



# Index

All locators refer to unit numbers. Numbers in **bold** indicate the main entry for the subject. Locators with the prefix R, for example “R1,” refer to information in the reference section.

## A

- “a” **63, 64, 70**
- abilities **56, 57**
- “-able” suffixes **115**
- “about” **101, 108, 109**
- absolute adjectives **93**
- “absolutely” **100**
- abstract nouns **72**
- action verbs **49, 50**
  - in present tense **4, 5**
- “actually” **118**
- adjectives **63, 84, 92, R1**
  - adding emphasis to **103**
  - comparative **94, 95, 96**
  - gradable and non-gradable **93**
  - hedging with **119**
  - same forms as adverbs **98, 99**
  - superlative **97**
  - with “enough” and “too” **104**
  - with prepositions **109, R15**
  - with suffixes **115**
- adverbials **88, R25**
- adverbs **R1**
  - comparative and superlative **99**
  - describing verbs **100**
  - in phrasal verbs **55**
  - of degree **93, 100**
  - of frequency **102**
  - of manner **98**
  - of time **101**
  - same forms as adjectives **98, 99**
  - with “enough” and “too” **104**
  - see also* gradable adjectives
- advice **56, 59**
- “afford” **90**
- “afraid” **90, 118**
- “after” **105, 107, 117**
- “afternoon” and “morning” **107**
- age, adjectives for **92**
- agents, of sentences **24, 25**
- agreement
  - noun-verb **68**
  - subject-verb **71**
- “all” **77, 82**
- “almost” **76, 96**
- “a lot” **75, 94**
- alphabet **R2**
- “already” **101**
- “although” **111**
- “always” **102**
- “am” **24**
  - see also* “be”
- “an” **63, 64, 70**
- “-ance” suffixes **115**

- “and” **68, 89**
  - as coordinating conjunction **110**
  - in spoken numbers **74**
- answering questions **41, 66, 80**
- “any” **63, 70**
- “anyone” and “anybody” **79**
- “anything” **79**
- “anyway” **20, 118**
- apostrophes **80**
- “appear” **119**
- approximations **76**
- “are” and “is” **24, 71, 85**
  - “are not” and “aren’t” **2**
  - see also* “be”
- articles **63, 64, 69, R1**
  - definite article (“the”) **97**
- “as... as” comparisons **76, 96**
- asking questions *see* questions
- “as soon as” **111**
- “at” **106, 107, 109**
- “-ate” suffixes **115**
- “at the moment” **19**
- auxiliary verbs **1, 49, 88, R13**
  - in questions **34, 37**
  - in indirect questions **38**
  - in open questions **36**
  - in question tags **39**
  - in short answers **40, 41**
  - with present and past participles **51**
  - see also* modal verbs
- avoiding repetition **89, 90, 91**
- “awful” **93**

## B

- backchanneling **120**
- “bad” and “badly” **98, 99**
- base form (verbs) **51**
  - in questions **34**
  - with modal verbs **56**
  - with “can” and “cannot” **57**
  - with “might” **62**
  - with “did” and “did not” **8, 9**
  - with “going to” **17**
  - with “should” **59**
  - with “used to” **15**
  - see also* infinitives (verbs)
- “be”
  - adjectives after **92**
  - contractions of **R13**
  - in future tense **20, 26, 85**
  - in passive voice **24, 26, 27, 28**
  - in past tense **7, 8, 9**
  - in present tense **1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 11**
    - in questions **4, 34, 39**
    - open questions **36**
    - short questions **40**
  - in short answers **41**
  - with personal pronouns **77**
  - with shortened infinitives **90**
  - with “used to” **116**
- “beautiful” **94**

- “because” **111, 112**
- “been”
  - “have been” **12, 27, 28**
  - in future tense **21, 26**
  - in past tense **14**
  - in present tense **11, 12, 25**
- “before” **107**
- “being” **24**
- “best” **97**
- “better” **99**
- “between” **106, 109**
- “between...and...” **107**
- body language **118**
- “both” **68**
- “but” **110, 112**
  - with ellipsis **89**
  - with inversions **88**
- “by”
  - as preposition **105, 107, 108, 109**
  - “by far” **97**
  - “by the way” **118**
  - in passive voice **24**

## C

- “can” **56, 57**
  - after “nor” **110**
  - “cannot” and “can’t” **41, 57, 61**
  - for permission and requests **58**
  - in first conditional **30**
  - in short answers **41**
- capitalization **69**
- cardinal numbers **74**
- cause and effect, adjectives for **95**
- “certainly” **118**
- “chance” **90**
- changes in meaning **52, 55, R22**
  - addition of prefixes and suffixes **114, 115**
  - addition of defining relative clauses **81**
  - auxiliary verbs with main verbs **49**
  - degrees, of adverbs and adjectives **100, 104**
  - question words with “-ever” **84**
  - use of prepositions **106, 109**
- changes to subject **118, 120**
- classifying adjectives **93**
- closed questions **38, 41, 42, 47**
- collective nouns **71**
- collocations, reflexive **78**
- colors, adjectives for **92**
- comma use
  - in numbers **74**
  - in sentences **29, 31, 82**
  - with coordinating conjunctions **110**
- common nouns **69**
- common prefixes **114**
- common suffixes **115**
- comparative adjectives **94, 95, 103**
- comparative adverbs **99**
- comparisons **94, 95, 96**
  - in arguments **119**
  - with conjunctions **112**
- complements **90**
- “completely” **100**

complex prepositions **105**  
 compound nouns **73**  
 conceding a point **118**  
 conclusion markers **117**  
 concrete nouns **72**  
 conditional sentences **29, 30, 31, 59**  
 conjunctions **110, 111, 113, R1**  
   ellipsis after **89**  
 consonants **R2**  
 continuous forms **12, 14, 50**  
   in future tense **20, 21**  
   *see also* past continuous; present continuous  
 contractions **6, 77, R13**  
   negative **2, 4**  
   use of apostrophes in **80**  
 contrasting phrases **110, 111, 113**  
 conversational English *see* spoken English  
 coordinating conjunctions **110, 113**  
 correcting subjects **118**  
 "could" **44, 56**  
   "could not" and "couldn't" **61, 62**  
   "could you tell me" **38**  
   for past abilities **57**  
   for permission and requests **58**  
   for suggestions **59**  
   in deductions **61**  
   in second conditional **29, 30**  
   with "wish" **33**  
 countable nouns **70, 75**  
   abstract **72**  
   substitution of **91**  
   with "enough" and "not enough" **104**  
   *see also* uncountable nouns

**D**  
 dates **74, 75**  
 decade phrases **80**  
 decimals **74**  
 decisions  
   with "going to" **17**  
   with "will" **18**  
 deductions **56, 61**  
 defining relative clauses **63, 81**  
   *see also* non-defining relative clauses  
 definite article ("the") **63, 64, 97**  
 degrees, of adverbs and adjectives **100, 104**  
 demonstrative determiners **65**  
   "that" **86, 87, R13**  
   "that" as relative pronoun **81**  
   "that" in passive voice **28**  
   "that" with "so" and "such" **103**  
   "these" and "those" **44**  
   "this" **43, 45**  
 dependent prepositions **109**  
 describing words *see* adjectives  
 desires ("wish") **33**  
 determiners **R1**  
   "each" and "every" **67**  
   "no" **41, 47, 66**  
   possessive **80**  
   "whichever" and "whatever" as **84**  
   with "either," "neither," and "both" **68**

"did"  
   "did not" and "didn't" **8, 60**  
   in questions **9, 34, 37**  
   in open questions **36**  
 direct objects **53, 55**  
   pronouns **77**  
 direct speech **44**  
   *see also* reported speech  
 disagreeing subjects **118**  
 discourse markers **117**  
 discussions **119**  
 distances, with "it" **86**  
 distancing, from statements **119**  
 "do" and "does" **49, 80**  
   "do you know" **38**  
   for substitution **91**  
   in answers **40, 41**  
   in questions **3, 34, 37**  
     open questions **36**  
     question tags **39**  
     reported questions **47**  
   in requests **6**  
   in short answers **41**  
   *see also* "do not" and "don't"  
 "-dom" suffixes **115**  
 "do not" and "don't" **2, 79**  
   as imperatives **6**  
   "does not" and "doesn't" **2, 80**  
   "don't have to" **60**  
   in reported speech **46**  
   in short answers **41**  
   with "have" **80**  
 double object verbs **53**  
 dummy subject ("it") **86**  
 duration, prepositions for **107**  
 "during" **107**

**E**  
 "each" **67, 78**  
 "-ed" suffixes **7, 11, 51**  
   adjectives with **92**  
 "either" **68, 110**  
 elision *see* contractions  
 ellipsis **89, 110, R3**  
 emphasis **59, 78**  
   imperatives **6**  
   in formal organizing phrases **117**  
   inversion of words **88**  
   "no" and nouns **66**  
   shifting focus **87**  
   through repetition **95**  
   with conjunctions **112**  
   with "far" and "much" **104**  
   with "little" **75**  
   with "so" and "such" **103**  
   *see also* stress  
 empty subject ("it") **86**  
 "-en" suffixes **115**  
 "-ence" suffixes **115**  
 "enough" **75, 104**  
 "entirely" **100**  
 "-er" suffixes **94, 99, 115**  
 "-es" suffixes **1, 5, 69**

"-est" suffixes **97, 99**  
 "even though" **111**  
 "-ever," with question words **84**  
 "every" **67**  
 "everyone" and "everybody" **79**  
 "everything" **79**  
 evidence, predictions with **17**  
 exclamation marks **6**  
 expressions, comparative adjectives **95**  
 expressions of frequency **102**  
 extreme adjectives **93**

**F**  
 fact adjectives **92**  
 "fairly" **93, 100**  
 "fast," "faster," and "fastest" **97**  
 "feel" and "felt" **43, 50**  
 feelings **52**  
 female and male nouns **80, 92**  
   *see also* "he," "him," and "his," "she"  
 "few" and "fewer" **75, 91**  
 "finally" **117**  
 "fine" and "finely" **98**  
 "first" **117**  
 first (real) conditional **29, 30, 31**  
 first person pronouns **77**  
 focus, on parts of sentences **87**  
 "for" **107, 109**  
   "for example" **117**  
 formal English  
   conjunctions **112**  
   "nor" **110**  
   "ought to" **59**  
   polite requests **6, 58**  
   using inversion **30, 88**  
   "whether" **47**  
   "whom" **35, 81, 82**  
 formal organizing phrases **117**  
 fractions **74**  
 frequencies, questions about **35**  
 frequency, adverbs of **102**  
 "friendly" and "friendlier" **94**  
 "from... to..." **107**  
 "-ful" suffixes **115**  
 future **19, 23, 33, R10**  
   near, with "about to" **101**  
   obligations **60**  
   possibilities **32, 62**  
   with "yet" **101**  
 future continuous **20, 23**  
 future in the past **22, 23**  
 future, passive voice in **26**  
 future perfect **21, 23, R11**  
   passive **26**  
 future simple **23, 26**  
 future with "going to" **17, 23**  
 future with "will" **18, 23**  
   in first conditional **29**  
   in reported speech **44**  
   phrasal verbs in **55**  
   with "there" **85**  
 future with "shall" **18**  
 future with "will be able to" **57**

# G

gender, nouns **69**  
 general opinions **92**  
 generic "the" **63**  
 gerunds **51, 52, 54, R18**  
   after prepositions **105**  
   patterns **53, 54**  
 "get" and "got" **28**  
   "get / have something done" **116**  
   "get on / up" **55**  
   "get used to" **116**  
 "go" **7, 11, 102**  
   "going to" **17, 20, 22, 23**  
   "going to be" **85**  
 "gone" **11**  
 "good" **93, 98, 99**  
   "good question" **120**  
 gradable adjectives **93**  
 grading adverbs **100**

# H

"had" **13, 25, R13**  
   "had been" **14**  
   "had better" **59**  
   in conditional sentences **29, 30**  
 "half" **96**  
 "harder" **95**  
 "has" **1, 11, 49**  
   "has been" **28, 85**  
   "has not" and "hasn't" **46**  
   "has to" **60**  
   possession **80**  
   subject-verb agreement **71**  
   *see also* "have"  
 "hate" **87, 90**  
 "have" **10, 21, 90**  
   contractions of **R13**  
   "have been" **12, 27, 28**  
   "have / get something done" **116**  
   "have got" **80**  
   "have not" and "haven't" **80**  
   "have to" **56, 60**  
   in third conditional **29, 31**  
   questions with **40, 80**  
   with pronouns **77**  
   *see also* "has"  
 hedging **119**  
 "he," "him," and "his" **77, 80, R13**  
   "he has" and "he's" **12**  
 "hence" **112**  
 "her" and "hers" **77, 80**  
   "herself" and "himself" **78**  
 "how" **35, 89**  
   "how often" **35, 102**  
 "however" **84**  
 hyphenated words **73**  
 hypothetical situations **29, 31**

# I

"I" **77, 80, R13**  
   "I am" **1**  
   "I am not" **2**  
   "I have" and "I've" **12**  
 "-ible" suffixes **115**  
 "-ify" suffixes **115**  
 "-ier" suffixes **94**  
 "-iest" suffixes **97**  
 "if" **47**  
   closed questions **38**  
   "if I were you" **59**  
   "if only" **33**  
   in conditional sentences **29, 30, 31**  
 "-ily" suffixes **98**  
 "im-" prefixes **114**  
 imperatives **6, 29, 78, R5**  
 "in" **106, 107, 109**  
   "in case" **32**  
   "in order to" **111**  
 indefinite articles **63, 64**  
 indefinite pronouns **79**  
 "indicate" **119**  
 indirect object **53**  
   pronouns **77**  
 indirect questions **38**  
 infinitives (verbs) **51, 105, R18**  
   clauses **28, 86, 90**  
   with "enough" and "too" **104**  
   patterns **52, 53**  
   with reporting verbs **45, 46**  
   shortening of **90**  
   *see also* base form (verbs)  
 informal English  
   answers **58**  
   "can" **58**  
   conjunctions **112**  
   ellipsis **89, 111**  
   "get" and "have" **116**  
   question tags **39**  
   *see also* spoken English  
 informal organizing words **120**  
 "-ing" suffixes **115**  
   adjectives with **92**  
   gerunds **51, 52, 54, R18**  
   after prepositions **105**  
   patterns **53, 54**  
   with continuous tenses **4, 10, 12**  
   with prepositions **54**  
 inseparable phrasal verbs **55, R21**  
 interjections **R1**  
   "wow" **120**  
   "yes" **41, 47**  
   *see also* exclamation marks  
 interviewing techniques **120**  
 intonation **39, 40, 44, 55**  
 intransitive verbs **49**  
 inversion, of words **38, 88**  
 irregular adverbs **98, 99**  
 irregular comparative adjectives **94**  
 irregular past participles **11, 51**  
 irregular plurals **69, R24**  
 irregular superlative adjectives **97**

irregular verbs **1, 7**  
 "is" and "are" **24, 71, 85** *see also* "be"  
   "is not" and "isn't" **2, 4, 46**  
 "-ism" suffixes **115**  
 "-ist" suffixes **115**  
 "it" **77, 80, 86**  
   clauses **86, 87**  
   contractions of **R13**  
   in passive voice **28**  
   "it is" and "it's" **80, 86, 87**  
   "its" **80**  
   "itself" **78**  
   "it was" **87**  
 "-ize" suffixes **115**

# JL

"just" **6, 101**  
   for emphasis **96**  
   "just in case" **32**  
   with statistics **76**  
 "later" and "latest" **99**  
 "least" **97, 99**  
 "less" **75, 99**  
   "less...than..." **94**  
 "-less" suffixes **115**  
 "let's" and "let's not" **6, 120**  
 "like" **44, 87, 90**  
   as conjunction **112**  
 likely actions and events **29**  
 linking words **49, 112, R25**  
   conjunctions **89, 110, 111, R1**  
 lists of nouns, conjunctions with **110**  
 "little" **75**  
 long adjectives **94, 95, 97**  
 longer compound nouns **73**  
 "look up to" **55**  
 "lots" **75**  
 "loudly" **98**  
 "love" **87, 90**  
 "-ly" suffixes **98**

# M

main verbs **49**  
   action (dynamic) verbs **4, 5, 50**  
   state (stative) verbs **4, 5, 50, R19**  
 "majority" and "minority" **76**  
 male and female nouns **80, 92**  
   *see also* "he," "him," "his," and "she"  
 "man" and "men" **69**  
 manners, adverbs of **98**  
 "many" **70**  
 materials, adjectives for **92**  
 "may" **56**  
   for permission and requests **58**  
   "may not" **62**  
   with deductions **61**  
   with possibilities **62**  
   *see also* "might"  
 "me" **77**  
 meanings, changes in *see* changes in meaning  
 "-ment" suffixes **115**



"might" **56**  
 in deductions **61**  
 in suggestions and advice **59**  
 in third conditional **29, 30**  
 "might not" **61, 62**  
 with possibilities **62**  
 minority" and "majority" **76**  
 "mis-" prefixes **114**  
 mixed conditionals **29**  
 modal verbs **49, 56**  
 for abilities **57**  
 for advice and suggestions **18, 59**  
 for deductions **61**  
 for obligations **60**  
 for offers and requests **18, 20, 58**  
 in conditional sentences **29, 30**  
 in questions **39, 40**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 in short answers **41**  
 passive voice with **27**  
 with wishes and regrets **33**  
*see also* "could," "would"

modifiers  
 adverbs **101**  
 adjectives with **94**  
 gradable adjectives **93**  
 in compound nouns **73**  
 prefixes **114**  
 with comparisons **96**  
 with superlatives **97**  
 "more" **75, 94, 99**  
 "more and more" **95**  
 "more... than..." **94**  
 "morning" and "afternoon" **107**  
 "most" **76, 97, 99**  
 "much" **70, 94**  
 "must" **56, 59**  
 in deductions **61**  
 in obligations **60**  
 "must not" and "mustn't" **60**  
 "my" and "mine" **80**  
 "myself" **78**

**N**  
 names, personal **63**  
 narrative tenses **10, 16**  
 nationalities, adjectives for **92**  
 "nearly" **102**  
 negatives **R12**  
 adverbials **88**  
 answers to questions **58**  
 avoiding repetition in **90, 91**  
 imperatives **6**  
 in "as...as" comparisons **96**  
 in future tense **17, 18**  
 in past tense **8, 33**  
 in present tense **2, 4, 5**  
 in reported speech **46**  
 modal verbs **56, 57**  
 questions **39, 40**  
 use of articles in **63**  
 with "but" **110**  
 with countable and uncountable nouns **70**

negatives *continued*  
 with "have" **80**  
 with indefinite pronouns **79**  
 with "neither" **68, 88**  
 with "use to" and "used to" **15**  
*see also* "not"  
 "neither" **68, 88**  
 "-ness" suffixes **115**  
 neutral questions **20**  
 "never" **88, 102**  
 newspaper headlines **73**  
 "next" **117**  
 "next to" **105, 106**  
 "no" **41, 47, 66**  
 "no sooner" **88**  
 "none" **66**  
 non-defining relative clauses **82**  
*see also* defining relative clauses  
 non-gradable adjectives **93**  
 non-grading adverbs **100**  
 non-reflexive verbs **78**  
 "no one" **79**  
 "nor" **68, 110**  
*see also* "or"  
 "not" **2, 8, 17**  
 for substitution **91**  
 in reported speech **46**  
 "not as...as" and "not so...as" **96**  
 "not enough" **75**  
 "not only" **88**  
 "not quite" **96**  
 with modal verbs **61**  
 "nothing" **79**  
 nouns **R1**  
 abstract and concrete **72**  
 adding emphasis to **103**  
 agreement, with verbs **68**  
 and shortened infinitives **90**  
 articles with **63**  
 based on phrasal verbs **55**  
 compound **73**  
 focusing with **87**  
 singular and plural **69**  
 with imperatives **6**  
 with "no" **66**  
 with possessive determiners **80**  
 with prepositions **105, 109, R16**  
 with suffixes **115**  
 "nowhere near" **96**  
 numbers **74, 67**  
 quantities **75, 76**

**O**  
 object pronouns **77**  
 object questions **37, 42**  
 objects  
 in defining relative clauses **81**  
 in passive sentences **24**  
 in reported speech **47**  
 use of articles with **63**  
 with prepositions **105**  
 with verbs **49, 53, 54**  
 reporting verbs **45, 46**

obligations **56, 60**  
 "occasionally" **102**  
 "of" **68, 109**  
 offers **18, 56, 58**  
 "often" **102**  
 "OK" **120**  
 omitted words **95**  
 ellipsis **89, 110, R3**  
 "on" **105, 106, 107**  
 "on the one / other hand" **119**  
 "on top of" **106**  
 "one" and "ones" **91**  
 "one another" **78**  
 "one of" **97**  
 "only when" **88**  
 open questions **4, 36, 42**  
 indirect **38**  
 reported **47**  
 opening phrases **38**  
 opinions **92**  
 "or" **110**  
 for suggestions **59**  
 in questions **47**  
 with "either" **68**  
 with ellipsis **89**  
 ordinal numbers **74**  
 organizing phrases **117**  
 organizing words, informal **120**  
 "other" **65**  
 "ought to" **33, 56, 59**  
 "our" and "ours" **80**  
 "ourselves" **78**  
 "-ous" suffixes **115**  
 "over-" prefixes **114**  
 ownership **80, 108**

**P**  
 parallel prepositions **105**  
 participles **10, 51**  
*see also* past participles  
 particles **55**  
 parts of speech **R1**  
 articles **63, 64, 69, 97**  
 conjunctions **89, 110, 111**  
 interjections **41, 47, 120**  
*see also* adjectives; adverbs; determiners;  
 nouns; prepositions; pronouns; verbs  
 passive voice **24, 28**  
 "by" in **108**  
 in the future **26**  
 in the past **25**  
 with modals **27**  
 past **16, R6**  
 abilities **57**  
 possibilities **62**  
 recent, with "just" and "already" **101**  
 "past," use in time phrases **107**  
 past continuous **10, 15, 16, 22**  
 passive **25**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 past, future in **22**

past participles **13, 51**  
 in passive voice **24, 25, 26, 27, 28**  
 in third (unreal past) conditional **29**  
 regular and irregular **11**

past perfect  
 continuous **14, 16**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 in third conditional **29, 31**  
 passive **25**  
 simple **13, 16**  
 with possibilities **32**  
 with "wish" **33**

past simple **7, 11, 14, 16**  
 in direct and reported speech **44**  
 in second conditional **29, 31**  
 negative **8**  
 passive **25, 28**  
 phrasal verbs in **55**  
 questions **9, 34, 39**  
 short questions **40**  
 with other past tenses **10, 13, 14**  
 with "there" **85**  
 with unlikely possibilities **32**  
 with "wish" **33**

percentages **74**

perfect passive **27**

permissions **56, 58**

personal pronouns **68, 77**

phrasal verbs **54, 55, R20–R21**  
*see also* three-word phrasal verbs

"pick up" **55**

places, description of **44, 106**

plans **52**

"please" **6**

plural forms  
 compound nouns **73**  
 irregular **R24**  
 nouns and pronouns **69, 77, 78**  
 subject-verb agreement **71**  
 substitution of **91**  
 use of apostrophes with **80**  
 use of articles with **63, 64**  
 with "both" **68**  
 with "there" **85**  
 with "these" and "those" **65**  
*see also* countable nouns; uncountable nouns

polite English *see* formal English

positive statements **79**  
 substitution in **91**  
 with "but" **110**  
 with "do" **88**  
 with question tags **39**

possession **80, 83, 108**

possibilities **62**  
 in questions **35**  
 modal verbs for **56, 59**

predictions **17, 18**

prefixes **114**

prepositions **105, 108, R1, R14–R17**  
 dependent **109**  
 of place **106**  
 of time **107**  
 with verbs **53, 54**

present **5, 34, R4**  
 for future events **19**  
 with future continuous **20**  
 with possibilities **32**  
 with "still" **101**

present continuous **4, 5, 23**  
 for future events **19**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 passive **24**  
 phrasal verbs in **55**  
 with future continuous **20**  
 with present participles **51**

present participles **10, 51**

present participle **4**

present passive **27**

present perfect **R7**  
 continuous **12, 14, 16**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 passive **25**  
 simple **11, 12, 16**  
 "there has been / have been" **85**  
 with past participles **51**  
 with auxiliary verbs **49**

present possibilities **62**

present simple **1, 5, 23**  
 for future plans **19**  
 in conditional sentences **29, 31**  
 in direct speech **43**  
 negative **2**  
 passive **28**  
 phrasal verbs in **55**  
 questions in **3, 39, 40**

"pretty" **100**

"probably" **18**

"promise" **90**

promises, using "will" **18**

pronouns **6, 53, 75, R1**  
 indefinite **79**  
 in reported speech **44**  
 "none" **66**  
 personal **77**  
 possessive **80**  
 reflexive **78**  
 relative **81**  
 "this" and "that" **65**  
 with prepositions **105**  
 with separable phrasal verbs **55**

pronunciation **74**  
 intonation **39, 40, 44, 55**  
*see also* stress

proper nouns **69**

punctuation **R3**  
 apostrophes **80**  
*see also* comma use

## Q

quantifiers **76, 82**

quantities **70, 76**  
 quantity phrases **75**

questions **34, 42, 56**  
 about frequency **102**  
 about quantities **70**  
 indirect **38**  
 in future tense **17, 20**  
 in past simple **9**  
 in present tense **3, 4, 5**  
 in reported speech **47**  
 object and subject **37**  
 open questions **36**  
 short **40**  
 tags **39**  
 use of articles in **63**  
 with "have" **80**  
 with indefinite pronouns **79**  
 with "might" **62**

question words **35, 36**  
 ellipsis after **89**  
 in relative structures **83**  
 with "-ever" **84**  
 with modal verbs **58**

"quietly" **98**

"quite" **75, 100**

## R

"rarely" **102**

"re-" prefixes **114**

reactions, to statements **120**

"really" **59, 100, 120**

reasons, in sentences **111**

recommendations **59**

reduced infinitives **90**

reflexive collocations **78**

reflexive pronouns **78**

regrets **33**

"regularly" **102**

regular past participles **11**

regular verbs **7**

relative clauses **87, 81, 82**

relative pronouns **81**

relative structures **83**

repetition, avoiding **89, 90, 91**

reported speech **43**  
 questions **47**  
 tenses in **44**  
 with negatives **46**

reporting verbs **28, 45**

requests **20, 56, 58**

results, in sentences **29, 108, 111**

reversing of words (inversion) **38, 88**

"right" **120**

# S

"-s" suffixes **1, 5, 69**  
     in questions **3**  
     negatives **2**  
     to show regular events **107**  
     with singular agreement **71**  
 "say" and "said" **43, 45**  
 saying English *see* pronunciation  
 scene-setting **10**  
 second (present unreal) conditional **29, 31**  
     "if I were you" **59**  
     with modal verbs **30**  
 second person pronouns **77**  
 "seem" **119**  
 "-self" and "-selves," suffixes **78**  
 sentences, parts of *see* parts of speech  
 separable phrasal verbs **55, R20**  
 sequencing phrases and markers **117**  
 "shall" **18, 56, 58**  
 shapes, adjectives for **92**  
 "she" **77, 80, R13**  
 shifting focus, in parts of sentences **87**  
 short answers **41**  
 shortened words *see* contractions  
 short questions **40, 42**  
 "should" **36, 56, 59**  
     "should have" **33**  
 similar-sounding words **74, R22**  
 simple forms **13, 26, 50**  
     in present perfect tense **11, 12**  
     *see also* past simple; present simple  
 "since," with times or dates **107**  
 singular forms, verbs **79**  
 singular forms, nouns **69, 73**  
     subject-verb agreement **71**  
     substitution of **91**  
     use of apostrophes with **80**  
     use of articles with **64**  
     with "either" and "neither" **68**  
     with "there" **85**  
     with "this" and "that" **65**  
     *see also* countable nouns; uncountable nouns  
 "-sion" suffixes **115**  
 sizes, adjectives for **92**  
 "slightly" **94**  
 "slower" and "slowest" **99**  
 "so" **18, 88, 103**  
     as conjunction **110**  
     as informal organizing word **120**  
     for substitution **91**  
     in comparisons **96**  
     "so that" **111**  
 "some" **63, 64, 76**  
     for substitution **91**  
     in non-defining relative clauses **82**  
     with countable and uncountable nouns **70**  
 "someone" and "somebody" **79**  
 "something" **79**  
 "sometimes" **102**  
 specific opinions **92**  
 speculations *see* deductions

speech, parts of *see* parts of speech  
 spelling rules **R23**  
     for gerunds **51**  
     for plurals **69**  
     for suffixes **7, 115**  
     in past simple **7**  
     in present participle **4**  
 spoken English **120**  
     "although" **111**  
     ellipsis **89**  
     "have got" **80**  
     intonation in **39, 40, 44, 55**  
     phrasal verbs **55**  
     questions **38, 39, 40**  
 stalling techniques **120**  
 state verbs **49, 50, R19**  
     in present tense **4, 5**  
 statistics **76**  
 "still" **101**  
 "stop" **6**  
 storytelling **10, 16**  
 stress **74, 112**  
     on first syllables **55**  
     on last syllables **4, 7, 51, 115**  
 "stronger" **95**  
 subject pronouns **77**  
 subject questions **37, 42**  
 subjects and verbs **49**  
     agreement **7, 71**  
     inversion of **38, 88**  
 subjects in defining relative clauses **81**  
 subjects in passive voice **24, 25, 28**  
 subjects in questions **34**  
     in future tense **17**  
     in past tense **9**  
     in present tense **3, 4**  
 subjects in reported speech **47**  
 subjects with imperatives **6**  
 subordinate clauses **111, 113**  
 subordinating conjunctions **111, 113**  
 substitution **65, 91**  
 "such" **103, 117**  
 suffixes **7, 115**  
 "suggest" **119**  
 suggestions **18, 56, 59**  
 superlative adjectives **97**  
 superlative adverbs **99**  
 "suppose" **32**  
 syllables **74, 94, 97**  
     *see also* long adjectives; stress

# T

"tall" and "taller" **94**  
 "tell" and "told" **43, 45**  
 tenses  
     auxiliary verbs to form **49**  
     in reported speech **43, 44, 47**  
     phrasal verbs in **55**  
     *see also* future; past; present  
 "than" **94**

"that" **65, 86, 87, R13**  
     as relative pronoun **81**  
     in passive voice **28**  
     with "so" and "such" **103**  
     *see also* "this"  
 "the" **63, 64, 97**  
     "the more... the merrier" **95**  
     "the... the better" **95**  
 "their" and "theirs" **80, R13**  
 "them" **68**  
 "themselves" **78**  
 "then" **94, 117**  
 "there" **28, 41, 85**  
 "therefore" **112**  
 "these" and "those" **44, 65**  
 "they" **77, 80, R13**  
 "think" **18**  
 third (past unreal) conditional **29, 30, 31**  
 third person **1, 5, 77**  
 "this" **43, 45, 65**  
     *see also* "that"  
 "those" and "these" **44, 65**  
 "though" **112**  
 three-word phrasal verbs **55**  
 time, descriptions of **15, 107, R26**  
     adverbials **88**  
     conjunctions as time phrases **113**  
     specific expressions of **19, 44, 86**  
 "-tion" suffixes **115**  
 "to"  
     as preposition **105, 109**  
     in reduced infinitives **90**  
     use in time phrases **107**  
     *see also* infinitives (verbs)  
 "tomorrow" **19**  
 "too" **75, 104**  
 "totally" **100**  
 transitive verbs **49, 53**

# U

UK and US English, differences between  
     collective nouns **71**  
     "further" and "furthest" **94**  
     prepositions **107**  
     "quite" **100**  
     short questions **40**  
     spoken numbers **74**  
     subordinate time clauses **111**  
     tenses **11**  
 "un-" prefixes **114**  
 uncertainties **62**  
 uncountable nouns **64, 70, 75**  
     abstract **72**  
     with "enough" **104**  
     with "there is" **85**  
     with zero article **63**  
     *see also* countable nouns  
 "under-" prefixes **114**  
 "underneath" **106**  
 understatements **75**  
 "unique" **93**  
 "unless" **30**  
 unlikely actions and events **29**



unreal past actions and events **29**  
“until” **107**  
“us” **68, 77**  
“used to” and “use to” **15, 16, 116, R9**  
US English *see* UK and US English,  
differences between  
usually” **102**

**V**  
verbal nouns **51**  
*see also* gerunds  
verbs **49, 52, R1, R17–R19**  
action verbs **4, 5, 50**  
adjectives after **92**  
agreement, in sentences **68, 71**  
described by adverbs **100**  
hedging verbs **119**  
in shortened infinitives **90**  
inversion of subjects and **17, 47, 88**  
negatives with **2, R12**  
non-reflexive verbs **78**  
objects with **53**  
phrasal verbs **55, R20–R21**  
*see also* three-word phrasal verbs  
prepositions with **54, 109**  
regular and irregular verbs **1, 7**  
reporting verbs **28, 47**  
state verbs **4, 5, 50**  
*see also* base form (verbs), “-ing” suffixes,  
infinitives (verbs)  
verbs in questions **3, 4, 9, 34**  
question tags **39**  
open questions **36**  
short questions **40**  
“very” **93, 94, 100**  
vowels **63, R2**

**W**  
“want” **53, 87, 90**  
“was” and “were” **25**  
questions **9, 34**  
in past tense **7, 8, 10**  
future in the past **22**  
subject-verb agreement **71**  
“were not” and “weren’t” **8**  
with “there” **85**  
“we” **77, 80, R13**  
weather, described with “it” **86**  
weighing up arguments **119**  
“well” **99**  
for stalling **120**  
in approximate quantities **76**  
“went” **7**  
“were” *see* “was” and “were”  
“what” **35, 87**  
ellipsis after **89**  
in relative structures **83**  
“what if” **32**  
“whatever” **84**  
“when” **35, 87**  
in conditional sentences **29**  
in questions about frequency **102**  
in relative structures **83**  
in subordinate time clauses **111**  
“whenever” **84**  
“where” **35, 87, 106**  
ellipsis after **89**  
in relative structures **83**  
“whereas” **112**  
“whereby” **83**  
“wherever” **84**  
“whether” **38, 47**  
“which” **35, 87**  
as relative pronoun **81, 82**  
“whichever” **84**  
“while” **111**  
“who” and “whom” **35, 37, 87, R13**  
as relative pronoun **81, 82**  
ellipsis after **89**

“whoever” **84**  
“whom” *see* “who” and “whom”  
“whose” **35, 83**  
“why” **35**  
“will” **18, 20, 21, 23, R12–R13**  
passive voice **26**  
in first (real) conditional **30, 31**  
“will be” **85**  
“will be able to” **57**  
“will have to” and “will not have to” **60**  
“will not” and “won’t” **18**  
“wish” **33**  
wishes **52**  
“with” and “without” **108, 109**  
“woman” and “women” **69**  
“won’t be able to” **57**  
word endings (suffixes) **7, 115**  
word order  
for formal English **30**  
for questions **34, 38, 40**  
inversion **17, 47, 88**  
“work out” **55**  
“would” **44, 56, 59, R9**  
contractions of **R13**  
future in the past with **22**  
in conditional sentences **29, 30, 31**  
with “wish” **33**  
with past habits **15, 16**  
“would like” **90**  
“wow” **120**

**YZ**  
“-y” suffixes **69, 115**  
year phrases **80**  
“yes” **41, 47**  
“yet” **101, 110, 112**  
“you” **68, 77, 80, R13**  
“your” and “yours” **80, R13**  
“yourself” and “yourselves” **78**  
zero article **63, 64**  
zero conditional **29, 31**

---

# Acknowledgments

## The publisher would like to thank:

Carrie Lewis for proofreading; Elizabeth Wise for indexing; Lili Bryant and Laura Sandford for editorial assistance; Tim Bowen for language advice; Chrissy Barnard, Amy Child, Alex Lloyd, and Michelle Staples for design assistance; Gus Scott for additional illustration.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit  
**www.dkimages.com**.